

Step Ahead Series
Together to a bright future

Connect 6

First Term



Part

1

Revision on Primary (5) "Connect (5) Grammar Revision"

مراجعة على أهم قواعد (Connect 5)



The Present Simple Tense

زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → like	I → don't like	Do → I like ?
He } likes	He } doesn't like	Does { he like ?
She } likes	She } doesn't like	Does { she like ?
It } likes	It } doesn't like	Does { it like ?
You } like	You } don't like	Do { you like ?
We } like	We } don't like	Do { we like ?
They } like	They } don't like	Do { they like ?

تُستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط لنعبر عن كم مرة نقوم بعمل شيء ما.

always	often	usually	sometimes	never
--------	-------	---------	-----------	-------

1 Choose the correct answer:

- I (catch - catches - catching) the bus every morning.
- My mother always (cooks - cooking - cook) delicious food.
- Mrs Mona (work - works - working) at a language school.
- What (does - do - doing) you usually do in the evening?
- Nadia (go - goes - going) to school by car.
- (Do - Does - Are) you like speaking English?
- My sisters (do - does - doing) the homework at night.
- We usually (eat - eating - eats) yogurt for breakfast.
- Mom (has - have - is having) a sharp knife to cut the vegetables.
- My boss (ask - asking - asks) me to do some jobs.

11. (Do - Does - Is) Ahlam like fish?
12. (Do - Does - Are) you like reading books?
13. How often (do - does - doing) you go to the club?
14. How often (do - does - doing) Yassin tidy his room?
15. Amgad (always has - has always - always have) a nice smile.
16. Hagar (is never - never is - are never) late for school.



Verb to be in the past

was

I - He - She - It - Singular
(أي اسم مفرد)

were

You - We - They - Plural
(أي اسم جمع)



The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I He She It You We They played	I He She It You We They did not play..... didn't play.....	I play.....? he play.....? she play.....? it play.....? you play.....? we play.....? they play.....? Did

يوجد كلمات دالة على زمن الماضي البسيط مثل:

yesterday	أمس	in the past	في الماضي
ago	منذ	last (week)	الأسبوع (الماضي)

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Yesterday, my cousin (comes - came - come) to visit us.
2. I was late because I (miss - missed - missing) the train.
3. My grandma (go - goes - went) to Alexandria two days ago.
4. They (eating - ate - eats) pizza at a restaurant in the square.
5. We (had - have - has) a great time and enjoyed a lot.
6. What did he (eats - eating - eat) for lunch?
7. Did she (go - goes - went) to Aswan last week?
8. How (does - did - done) you feel about the new theater?
9. It (start - starts - started) to rain an hour ago.
10. I (don't - didn't - doesn't) see you last week.
11. Where did she (go - goes - went) last weekend?
12. He didn't (came - coming - come) with us because he was tired.

3 Change into negative:

1. I came late yesterday.

2. They went to school yesterday.

3. I arrived on time.

4. We were happy in the garden.

5. She ate pasta an hour ago.

4 Make correct questions:

1. I went to the park yesterday.
 ?

2. They **helped** their mother last week.

▶ ?

3. We played **football** at the club.

▶ ?

4. Yes, I was **happy**.

▶ ?

5. No, she wasn't at the **zoo**.

▶ ?



The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

Affirmative الإثبات	Negative النفي	Interrogative الاستفهام
I → was reading	I → wasn't reading	Was → I reading ?
He } She } was reading	He } She } wasn't reading	Was { he reading ? she reading .. ? it reading ?
It } You } We } were reading	It } You } We } weren't reading	Were { you reading .. ? we reading ? they reading .. ?
They }	They }	

○ يُعَبَّرُ عن حدث وقع في الماضي واستغرق حدوثه فترة من الوقت.

○ She **was helping** her mom on Friday morning.

5 Choose the correct answer:

- Ramy (**is** - **was** - **were**) fishing last week.
- Was he (**study** - **studies** - **studying**) English with his dad?
- My father was (**work** - **works** - **working**) all day yesterday.
- (**Was** - **Were** - **Is**) he having breakfast at ten yesterday?
- What (**are** - **were** - **was**) you doing at 8 pm yesterday?
- (**Was** - **Were** - **Am**) you reading a story at five the day before?

Revision

7. We (**was** - **were** - **are**) having a great time at the garden.
8. The tiger (**was** - **were** - **is**) running at the forest.
9. Was she (**help** - **helps** - **helping**) her mother at the kitchen?
10. Were they (**play** - **playing** - **played**) tennis at five in the afternoon?
11. What were you (**do** - **does** - **doing**) yesterday?
12. (**Does** - **Are** - **Was**) he swimming all day?
13. I was (**listen** - **listened** - **listening**) to the radio when my mom entered my room.
14. Some geese (**were** - **was** - **is**) swimming in the pond.
15. My father (**was** - **is** - **were**) doing his work when the light went off.

6

Write the correct word from the box:

was - were

1. The duck swimming.
2. The cats running away.
3. the farmer growing vegetables?
4. They helping their mom.
5. My mom cooking in the kitchen.
6. I watching TV when the light went out.
7. We walking in a beautiful garden.
8. they watching a match or a film?
9. Manar taking a shower yesterday.
10. The students reading English at the class.
11. What they doing at the Nubian village?
12. Ahmed explaining what greenhouse gases are.



أي some - بعض any

- We can use (**some - any**) before countable or uncountable nouns.
○ يمكن أن نستخدم (any - some) قبل الأسماء التي تعد أو قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد.
- We use (**some**) in affirmative sentences and (**any**) in questions and negative sentences.
○ نستخدم (some) في الجمل المُثَبِّتة وسؤالِي العرض والطلب، بينما نستخدم (any) في الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية.
- When we offer or ask for something politely, we use the word (**some**) not (**any**).
○ نستخدم (some) بدلاً من (any) في الجملة الاستفهامية (السؤال) عند عرض شيء أو طلب شيء بأسلوب مهذب.

7

Choose the correct answer:

1. There (is - are - aren't) some milk in the glass.
2. There (is - isn't - aren't) any water in the bottle.
3. There (is - isn't - aren't) one carrot on the shelf.
4. Do you have (some - any - a) biscuits?
5. I would like (some - any - an) eggs.
6. Are there any (banana - bananas - a banana)?
7. There (is - are - aren't) some fruit and vegetables on the plate.
8. Is there (some - any - a) butter in the pan?
9. How about buying some (grapes - grape - a grape)?
10. There isn't (some - any - a) jam in the fridge.
11. She wants (a - an - some) onion.
12. Is there (a - an - any) pineapple on the table?
13. Do you like (some - any - a) sugar in your tea?
14. Can I have (some - any - a) juice, please?
15. Is there (a - any - an) jam in the fridge?

Revision

16. Could you give me (some - any - a) salt, please?
17. Are there (some - any - a) tomatoes in the market?
18. Is there any (eggs - dates - cheese) in the fridge?
19. (Am - Is - Are) there any sugar in the supermarket?
20. Please, can I have some (apples - apple - an apple)?

8 Complete the following sentences with (some – any):

1. There are oranges on the table.
2. Are there figs in the market?
3. Is there sugar in the cup?
4. There's cheese in the fridge.
5. Are there cups of coffee on the table?
6. He had sandwiches for dinner.
7. Can you give me water, please?
8. There's juice in the glass.
9. Do you have eggs?
10. Would you like orange juice?



لأن - because - to

- We can answer the questions that begin with (why) by using (to) or (because).

○ يمكن الإجابة على السؤال البادئ بـ (why) باستخدام (to) أو (because).

- Why did she go to a restaurant? ► To have a sandwich.
- Why did Dad come home early? ► Because he felt tired.

Note that:

لاحظ أن:

تُتبع (because) بجملة تامة بينما (to) تُتبع بمصدر الفعل، ومصدر الفعل هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافات، أي بدون إضافة (s - es - ing - ed).

9 Choose the correct answer:

1. I went to bed early (because - to - so) I was tired.
2. My brother bought new shorts (because - to - so) wear at the beach.
3. Why is she running? ► (So - To - Because) she's late.
4. I went to the library (to - because - so) borrow a book.
5. Why do you go to the club? ► (Because - To - So) play with my friends.
6. She bought a new suitcase (because pack - to pack - packs) her clothes.
7. I studied hard (to - because - so) get good marks.
8. Yassin went to the library (to - because - so) read books.
9. Why did May go to the kitchen? ► (It helps - To help - Because help) her mom.
10. I went to the hall (to get - getting - because get) my coat.
11. Amira bought sunglasses to (wear - wears - wearing) on sunny days.
12. Ehab went to the market (to - so - because) buy pasta.
13. My father bought a new phone (to - so - because) call his friends.
14. She looks like a princess (because - to - so) she is so beautiful.
15. Why is Adel sad? ► (To - Because - So) he got bad marks.



Verb to have عندي - لدي

Verb to have

has

He - She - It -
Singular ►►► أي اسم مفرد

have

I - You - We - They -
Plural ►►► أي اسم جمع

Remember تذكّر

- | | | | |
|--------|------------|---|-----------------|
| ○ have | عند النفي | → | don't have |
| ○ has | عند النفي | → | doesn't have |
| ○ have | عند السؤال | → | Do (you) have |
| ○ has | عند السؤال | → | Does (she) have |

10 Choose the correct answer:

1. I (am - has - have) a headache.
2. We (are - have - has) a cold.
3. Does Shady (has - had - have) a cough?
4. She doesn't (has - have - had) cuts on her arms.
5. My mother (has - have - is) a toothache.
6. He (is - do - has) an earache.
7. Do you (has - have - are) a stomachache?
8. Does he (had - have - has) a cough?
9. Ahmed (don't - doesn't - isn't) have a headache.
10. You (are - has - have) a cold. Stay at home, please.



Ability (الاستطاعة)

can

يستطيع

can't

لا يستطيع

○ نعبّر عن الاستطاعة في المضارع باستخدام (can - can't).

could

كان يستطيع

couldn't

لم يكن يستطيع

○ نعبّر عن الاستطاعة في الماضي باستخدام (could - couldn't).

11 Choose the correct answer:

1. I (can - can't - couldn't) fly a kite. It's easy.
2. I wanted to see the bats, but I (can't - could - couldn't).
3. (Can - Could - Couldn't) you make pasta? ▶ No, I can't.
4. Penguins (can - can't - couldn't) swim very well. They like water.
5. (Can - Can't - Could) he get the full mark? ▶ Yes, he could.
6. Can you (come - came - comes) with us?

7. I (can - can't - couldn't) buy that expensive car. I have no money
8. Could Taher (play - played - plays) the match yesterday?
9. What (can - could - can't) you do yesterday?
10. I (can - can't - am) speak French. It's so difficult.



The Imperative

صيغة الأمر

- **Affirmative imperatives use the infinitive without (to):**

○ عند الأمر، نضع الفعل في المصدر في أول الجملة.

Open the door, please.

Sit down, Ahmed.

- **Negative imperatives use don't + infinitive without to:**

○ عند النهي، نبدأ الجملة بـ (Don't) وبعدها الفعل في المصدر.

Don't eat in the library.

Don't throw rubbish.

12 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Write - Writes - Wrote) your answer in short sentences.
2. (Don't eat - Eat - Eats) fruit and vegetables to stay healthy.
3. (Doesn't - Don't - Do) waste your time.
4. (Listening - Listens - Listen) to your teacher carefully in the class.
5. Don't (shouts - shout - shouting) in class.
6. (Come - Comes - To come) to school early
7. (Don't - Doesn't - Do) the housework with your mom
8. We will go to the park tomorrow. (Comes - Coming - Come) early, please.
9. (Don't - Doesn't - Do) eat in the class.
10. Don't (opens - open - opened) your notebooks. Look at the board.



The Adverb (الظرف الحال)

- We make most adverbs by adding (ly) to the end of the adjective.
○ عادة ما يتكون الظرف بإضافة (ly) للصفة.
- The words "hard - fast" can be used as adjectives and adverbs:
○ كلمتي "hard - fast" يمكن أن يتم استخدامهما كصفات وظروف.
- The adverb of the adjective "good" is "well":
○ الظرف من الصفة "good" هو "well".
- We use the adjective before a noun to describe it, but the adverb is used after a verb to describe it.
○ الصفة تصف اسماً وتأتي قبله. بينما الظرف يصف فعلاً ويأتي بعده.

13 Choose the correct answer:

1. The tortoise walks (slow - slowly - quick)
2. She can't run (slow - quick - quickly) in the street
3. I'm a (fast - slowly - quickly) rider.
4. He was (nervous - quietly - nervously) yesterday.
5. She speaks (nice - happy - nicely).
6. The teacher is shouting (loud - angry - angrily)
7. He is a (careful - carefully - carelessly) driver.
8. Wael can speak English (good - well - bad).
9. I can ride my bike (fast - slow - quick).
10. The boy is speaking (polite - politely - loud).



Unit 1

Green cities

مدن خضراء (مدن صديقة للبيئة)

In this unit I will

- listen, read, write, and research about green spaces in towns.
- talk about how often we do things.
- listen and read about a project to make a city greener.
- say the sounds *th* and *s*.
- write an email about things I miss about Egypt.
- research and make an infographic about my area.

Lesson

1

We Work in the Community Garden

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



apartment block

مبنى سكني - عمارة



community garden

حديقة / مجتمع - حديقة مجتمع



harvest (v)

يحصد



plant (v)

يزرع



natural fertilizer

سماد طبيعي



roof

سطح



volunteers

متطوعون



neighborhood

حي سكني

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

chemicals

مواد كيميائية

in the middle of the city

في وسط المدينة

organic

عضوي

in the market

في السوق

people's health

صحة الناس

project

مشروع

local area

منطقة محلية

make new friends

تكوين أصدقاء جدد

Foods أطعمة

fresh food

طعام طازج

vegetables

خضراوات

fruit tree

شجرة فاكهة

peppers

فلفل

lemons

ليمون

onions

بصل

dates

تمر - بلح

lettuce

خس

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
harvest	يحصد	harvested	want	يريد	wanted
plant	يزرع	planted	listen	يستمع	listened
work	يعمل	worked	use	يستخدم	used
help	يساعد	helped	like	يحب	liked
need	يحتاج	needed	live	يعيش	lived
clean	ينظف	cleaned	produce	تنتج	produced

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
am - is - are	يكون	was - were	grow	يزرع - ينمو	grew
do	يعمل - يفعل	did	eat	يأكل	ate
have	يملك - عنده	had	sell	يبيع	sold
read	يقرأ	read	come	يأتي	came
go	يذهب	went	mean	يعني	meant
can	يستطيع	could	meet	يفابل	met
make	يصنع - يُعدّ	made	think	يعتمد - يفكر	thought

Did you know?







'Urban greening' is an important part of town planning in many countries. It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

يُعدّ "التحضير الحضري" جزءًا مهمًا من تخطيط المدن في العديد من الدول، وهو يعني إنشاء مساحات من النباتات والأشجار في المدن. هذه المساحات يمكن أن تكون منتزهات صغيرة بين المباني أو حدائق على أسطح منازل الناس.



Read and learn

Where does Maryam go on Fridays?

 **Nour** : No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house? **Maryam** : Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden. **Nour** : The community garden? What's that? **Maryam** : It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too! **Nour** : That's interesting. What things do you grow? **Maryam** : Well, we usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. This year we have lemons and dates. **Nour** : And you grow all this food in the middle of the city. Wow! **Maryam** : Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and it's organic too, which means we only use natural fertilizer, we never use chemicals. **Nour** : Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables? **Maryam** : Yes, it does. From just one square meter of roof garden, we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great place to meet people and make friends. **Nour** : It sounds great Maryam. We need more community roof gardens like that in our city!

أين تذهب مريم أيام الجمعة؟



نور: ليس هناك مدرسة غداً! هل تريد أن تأتي إلي منزلي؟

مريم: شكرًا يا نور، لكنني دائمًا ما أساعد عمّتي بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة في حديقة المجتمع.

نور: حديقة المجتمع؟ ماذا يعني ذلك؟

مريم: إنها مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح المبنى السكني الذي تعيش فيه عمّتي سلمى، وجميع الأشخاص الذين يعملون فيها هم منطوعون من سكان الحي. نحن نزرع الخضراوات لنأكلها، وأحيانًا ما نبيعها في السوق أيضًا!

نور: هذا مثير للاهتمام. ما الأشياء التي تزرعونها؟

مريم: حسنًا، عادةً ما نزرع طماطم وفلفل وبصل وخس - الأشياء التي يأكلها الناس طوال الوقت. في بعض الأحيان نزرع أشجار فاكهة. هذا العام لدينا ليمون وبلح (تمر).

نور: وأنتم تزرعون كل هذا الطعام في وسط المدينة. واو!

مريم: نعم، وهذا يعني أنه يمكن للناس زراعة طعامهم الطازج، وهذا الطعام يكون عضويًا أيضًا، أي أننا نستخدم الأسمدة الطبيعية فقط، ولا نستخدم المواد الكيميائية أبدًا.

نور: هل تُنتج حديقتكم الكثير من الخضراوات؟

مريم: نعم. من متر مربع واحد من حديقة السطح، يمكننا خضّ عشرين كيلو جرامًا من الخضراوات سنويًا. وهذا ليس كل شيء؛ تساعد حدائق الأسطح كذلك على تنقية الهواء في المدينة، وهذا أمر جيد لصحة الناس. كما أنها مكان رائع للقاء الناس وتكوين الصداقات.

نور: يبدو هذا رائعًا يا مريم. نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من حدائق الأسطح المجتمعية كهذه في مدينتنا!

The lesson notes

► organic

◀ عضوي

المقصود بكلمة "organic" هي المحاصيل التي تعتمد في زراعتها على الأسمدة الطبيعية، وعادةً ما يكون هذا النوع من الزراعة أقل إنتاجية من الزراعة غير العضوية، وأيضًا أعلى ثمنًا، ولكنه في نفس الوقت صحي أكثر للإنسان وأفيد لجسمه. وعكسها كلمة "inorganic" غير عضوي.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

roof – plant – neighborhood – garden – apartment

Nour : No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

Maryam: Thanks, Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community ①

Nour : What's that?

Maryam: It's a big green space on the ② of my Aunt Salma's ③ block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the ④. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

aunt – clean – friends – grow – plants – roof – sell – tomorrow

Nour asks Maryam to go to her house ①, but Maryam goes to help her ② on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the ③ of an apartment block. They ④ vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they ⑤ them, too. Maryam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the ⑥ also help to ⑦ the air in the city, and the garden project is a good place to make new ⑧.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. I live in a/an (villa - tent - apartment) on the fifth floor.
2. They are (volunteers - workers - gardeners). They take no money.
3. You can see most of my town from the (door - roof - garden) of my apartment block. It's a very high building.

4. In the garden, we (plant - harvest - eat) lots of vegetables and they begin to grow quickly.
5. We use natural (sun - fertilizers - water) when planting organic food.
6. After they (water - see - harvest) the vegetables, they eat them or sell them at the market.
7. We never use (natural fertilizers - chemicals - water) when planting organic food.
8. My community is people who live in my (neighborhood - school - club)

4 Read and match "A" with "B":

- | A | B |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. Where does she go on Fridays? | a) We never use chemicals |
| 2. We grow vegetables to eat, | b) clean the air in the city |
| 3. We use natural fertilizer | c) They are all volunteers |
| 4. Does your garden produce fruit? | d) She goes to the community garden |
| 5. Roof gardens also help | e) and sometimes we sell them in the market |
| | f) Yes, it does. |

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. does - Fridays - go - Where - Maryam - on?
 ► ?
2. Fridays - on - I - my aunt - help - always.
 ►
3. vegetables - to - grow - We - eat
 ►
4. you - my house - Do - to come - want - to?
 ► ?

5. them – market – in – We – sell – the.

6. do – What – grow – things – you?

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. thanks nour, but i always help my aunt on fridays

2. it's on the roof of my aunt salma's apartment block

3. we usually plant tomatoes peppers onions and lettuce

4. where does mustafa go on tuesdays

5. does your family have a garden

7 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Basma:

Tell her what you and the volunteers in your community do to help your neighborhood be cleaner and more beautiful, and to produce its needs of food. Your email address is farida@hotmail.com And your friend's email address is basma@gmail.com.

From :

To :

Subject :

Lesson 2 We Always Work Hard

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



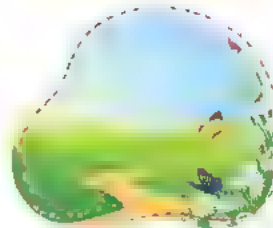
Mini Forest

ميني مورست (غابة مصغرة)



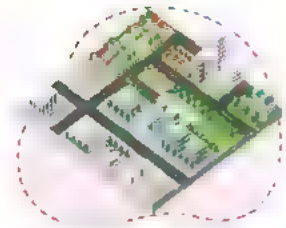
organization

منظمة



nature

طبيعة



local communities

مجتمعات محلية



information

معلومات



wildlife

حياة برية



climate

مناخ



weather

طقس

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Prepositions

on holding

في إجازة

at home

في البيت

on weekends

في العطلات الأسبوعية

get to

يصل إلى

on Tuesday

في يوم الثلاثاء

by bus

بالأوتوبيس

over time

بمرور الوقت

find out

يعرف - يكتشف

help with

يساعد في

look after

يعتني بـ

Other words

Join us	التحق بنا	urban locations	أماكن حضرية
Contact us	اتصل بنا - تواصل معنا	green space	مساحة خضراء
latest news	أحد الأخبار	green areas	مناطق خضراء
collect data	يجمع البيانات	foreign plants	نباتات تُزرع في غير موطنها الأصلي
information	معلومات	Earth Aid	مساعدة (إغاثة) الأرض
link	رابط (على الإنترنت)	gymnastics competition	مسابقة الجمناز

naturally	طبيعياً - تلقائياً	logo	شعار - لوجو
normally	بشكل طبيعي	research (n)	بحث علمي
effects	تأثيرات - آثار	movie theater	دار عرض سينمائي - دار عرض أفلام

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
join	يلتحق	joined		click	ينقر على	clicked	
collect	يجمع	collected		want	يريد	wanted	
call	يتصل	called		play	يلعب	played	
prefer	يُفضّل	preferred		live	يعيش	lived	
follow	يتبع - يتابع	followed		offer	يعرض	offered	
look after	يعتني بـ	looked after		work hard	يعمل بجدّ	worked hard	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
bring	يُخبر	brought		understand	يفهم	understood	
give	يعطي	gave		go	يذهب	went	
speak	يتكلم	spoke		find out	يكشف - يعرف	found out	

Earth Aid

What is Mini Forest?

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.



At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest.

We also usually work with local communities to plant and look after the forests over time. We collect data from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us. Click on the [link](#) to find out more.

ما هي "ميني فورست"؟

مساعدة (إغاثة) الأرض

"ميني فورست" هي منظمة تقوم برعاية مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار في قلب مُدُننا. تساعد هذه المناطق الخضراء الخاصة بالناس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة.

في منظمة «ميني فورست» الحياة البرية. نحن نعمل بجد دائماً لتحديد الأماكن الحضرية المثالية لغابنا، حيث يحتاج الناس والحياة البرية إلى الطبيعة أكثر من غيرها. نحن لا نزرع نباتات غريبة عن بيئتنا في مشاريعنا، بل دائماً ما نزرع أشجاراً تنمو تلقائياً في منطقة. ونحن نهتم بهم بحرص حتى يصبحوا غابة صغيرة.

كما أننا نعمل مع المجتمعات المحلية لزراعة الغابات و لعناية بها بمرور الوقت. نحن نجمع بيانات من كل غابة نزرعها عدة مرات في الشهر. ويساعدنا هذا على فهم آثار المساحة الخضراء الحديدة على الناس والحياة البرية والمناخ في المنطقة بمرور الوقت.

نادراً ما يكون لدينا عدد كافي من المتطوعين للانضمام إلى حركة "ميني فورست"! لمساعدتنا في مشاريعنا، لذلك دائماً ما نسعد عندما يتقدم لنا أشخاص لمساعدتنا". انقر على [الرابط](#) لمعرفة المزيد.

GRAMMAR STUDY

The Present Simple Tense (الزمن البسيط)

Affirmative (الإثبات)	Negative (النفي)	Interrogative (الاستفهام)
I → like	I → don't like	Do → I like
He } She } like	He } She } doesn't like	Does { He like She like It like
It } You } We } like	It } You } We } don't like	Do { you like we like they like
They }	They }	

■ We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

◀ نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أفعال متكررة الحدوث.

- I **visit** my cousins every week.
- He usually **goes** to school by bus.

Adverbs of frequency (أدوية التكرار)

■ We use some words with the present simple that are called (adverbs of frequency) such as:

◀ تُستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن المضارع البسيط، وتسمى تلك الكلمات ظروف التكرار، مثل:

100%	always	My dad always has dinner with us.
80%	usually	Mustafa usually plays with me.
60%	often	Mom often helps me with my homework.
40%	sometimes	I sometimes buy my mom presents.
20%	rarely	We rarely go out after 10 pm.
0%	never	We never travel to Alexandria by bus.

■ We use these words before the main verb or after (verb to be).

◀ نستخدم هذه الكلمات قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد (verb to be).

- We **usually** play football on the weekend
- Akram **sometimes** goes swimming with his friends.
- I **always** watch TV in the evening
- I **don't often** see my school friends on weekends.
- Soha **never** helps in the kitchen.
- Ahmed **is always** good to his friends
- My dad and mom **are rarely** angry with me.



How often

كم عدد المرات

■ We use (How often) to ask about the frequency of an action:

◀ نستخدم (How often) للسؤال عن تكرار حدوث فعل.

◀ نجيب على السؤال البادئ بـ (How often) بإحدى طريقتين:

1. إما باستخدام أحد ظروف التكرار (adverbs of frequency).

- How often do you go to the club? I **usually** go to the club
- How often does he walk to school? He **never** walks to school.
- How often does she draw pictures? She **always** draws pictures.

2. أو بذكر عدد المرات.

■ We can use these time expressions to talk about how often we do something:

once a (week)	مرة في (الأسبوع)	three times a (year)	ثلاث مرات في (السنة)
twice a (month)	مرتان في (الشهر)	every day	كل يوم

- How often do you work in the community garden?
▶ I work there **two afternoons a week**.
- How often does she visit her grandma?
▶ She visits her grandma **twice** a week.
- How often do you brush your teeth? I brush my teeth **once** a day.
- How often does he play football? He plays football **three times** a week.

تعبير (every day) ظرف زمان، ويوضع إما في بداية الجملة أو في نهايتها.

○ How often do you buy sweets and chips?

▶ I buy sweets and chips every day.

▶ Every day, I buy sweets and chips.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wildlife – forest – areas – organization – nature

Mini Forest is an ① which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy ② and help our ③. We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small ④

2 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Mini Forest is an organization which usually works with local communities to plant and look after the forests they plant over time. They collect data from every forest they plant a few times a month. This helps them understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area over time. They rarely have enough people for all their projects, so they need more volunteers to join the Mini Forest organization!



Choose the correct answer:

1. They collect data from every (tree - forest - garden) they plant.
2. They (rarely - always - often) have enough people for all their projects.



Answer these questions:

3. Why does the Mini Forest Organization work with local communities?
▶
4. Who do they need to join to the Mini Forest organization?
▶

3

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

nature – cities – volunteers – location – spaces

Rania : Where are you going, Sagda?

Sagda : I'm going to the Mini Forest Organization

Rania : What is this organization?

Sagda : It's an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our ① .

Rania : How is that?

Sagda : They plant lots of areas and make them green ② .

Rania : Awesome! How can they choose these areas?

Sagda : They always work hard to find the best urban locations for the Mini Forests, where people and wildlife need ③ most.

Rania : What can I do to help them?

Sagda : They always need ④ for their projects. You can join them.

Rania : Yes. That's a good idea.

4

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

Student's
Book

1. 10 pm – usually – in bed – before – I'm.



2. always – My dad – a healthy breakfast – in the morning – eats.



3. never – Donia and Wael – late – are – for school.



4. the dentist – you – go – How – do – often – to?



5. gives – sometimes – us – Our teacher – homework – on weekends.



6. rains – It – the Western Desert – rarely – in.



5

Choose the correct answer:

Student's
Book

1. The weather is (usually - never) sunny in Egypt in summer

SB

2. I (rarely - often) eat dates as a snack. I love them!

SB

3. (How often - How ever) do you play football with your friends?

SB

4. Samer (always - never) plays video games, He doesn't like them very much.

SB

5. We (sometimes - always) go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach.

SB

6. You (rarely - sometimes) call me now. Are you angry with me?




SB

7. We don't like fish at all. We (often - never) eat it.

SB

8. My aunt lives with us, so I (often - rarely) speak to her.

SB

9. I (sometimes - never) do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evening. 
10. Hani (rarely - often) plays football. He doesn't like sports. 
11. My father (sometimes - always) drives to work. There is no train or bus there. 
12. (What - Who - How) often do you watch TV?
13. He (goes rarely - rarely go - rarely goes) out when it's cold
14. We (play usually - usually play - usually plays) together on Fridays.
15. She (isn't - don't - doesn't) get up late.
16. Hend (like - likes - liking) reading stories
17. We (know - knows - are know) everything about keeping animals
18. What sport does he (pay - plays - playing)?
19. Lions (don't - doesn't - isn't) eat grass.
20. She doesn't (eat - eats - eating) her sandwiches
21. Where (do - does - is) he go on the weekend?
22. She (never goes - never - goes never) to school late.
23. Soha (never is - never - is never) late for school.
24. How (many - much - often) does she visit her grandma?
► Twice a week.
25. It (never rain - rains never - never rains) in August.
26. Ola and her sister (are a ways - a,ways are - is always) good to their teachers and friends.
27. How (many - often - much) do you brush your teeth?
28. I (usually vis t - visit usually - usua ly visits) my grandparents every weekend.
29. She (often take - takes often - often takes) her pet animal to the park.

Lesson 3 Reading

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

Wael's Favorite Place in New York



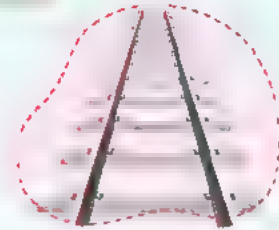
floor

طابق - دور



pass through

يمر عبر



railway line

خط سكة حديد



local residents

سكان محليون



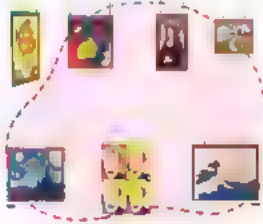
hang out

يتسكع - يخرج مع



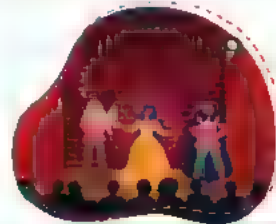
species of plants

أنواع نباتات



art works

أعمال فنية



theater performance

عرض مسرحي

The Selfish Giant



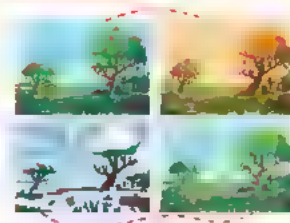
selfish

أناني



giant

عملاق



season

موسم



village

قرية



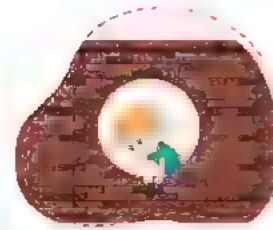
wonderful garden
حديقة رائعة



countryside
ريف



big wall
جدار كبير



hole
فتحة - ثقب



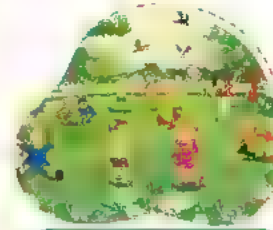
empty
فارغ



corner
ركن



branches
غصون الأشجار



local children
أطفال من سكان المنطقة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Prepositions

make ... into	يحوّل ... إلى	go out	يخرج
on the sixteenth floor	في الطابق السادس عشر	come back	يعود برجع
at night	ليلاً	on their way home	في طريقهم للبيت
wake up	يستيقظ	at home	في البيت
for a long time	لمترة طويلة	at the end of the story	في نهاية القصة

Other words

soft, green grass	عشب أخضر ناعم	tiny boy	صبي مثيل الحجم
lovely sound	صوت جميل	quiet	هادئ
winter	الشتاء	silent	صامت
spring	الربيع	noisy	مزعج
miss home (v)	يفتقد الوطن	famous	مشهور
the days pass	تُمرّ الأيام	great view	منظر رائع - إطلالة رائعة

Definitions تعريفات



pass through	: goes from one place to another
railway line	: a road for trains
local residents	: people who live in a neighborhood
hang out	: spend time with, relax together
miss	: feel sad that you can't have or see something

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
miss	يفتقد	missed		climb up	بتسلق	climbed up	
relax	يسترحي	relaxed		open	يفتح	opened	
walk	يمشي	walked		move	يتحرك	moved	
watch	يشاهد	watched		create	يُشسأ	created	
turn	يحول	turned		taste	بتذوق	tasted	
cover	يعطي	covered		share	يتشارك / يشارك	shared	
laugh	يضحك	laughed		arrive	يصل	arrived	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
run	يجري	ran		see	يرى	saw	
hang out	يخرج - يتسكع	hung out		fly away	يطير بعيداً	flew away	
tell	يُخبر	told		write	يكتب	wrote	
sing	يُغني	sang		spend time	يقضي وقت	spent time	
build	يبني	built		come back	يعود - يرجع	came back	
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell		stand	يقف	stood	
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up		go out	يخرج	went out	

Pronunciation



(th) = /θ/

(s) = /s/

thumb	إصبع الإبهام	sum	حاصل جمع - مسألة حسابية
think	يفكر - يعتقد	sink	حوض - يغوص
thick	سميك	sick	مريض
throw	يقذف - يرمي	so	لذلك
mouth	فم	mouse	فأر
path	طريق	pass	يمر - يجتاز
thing	شيء	sing	يغني
thirsty	عطشان	seed	بذرة
thanks	شكراً	stalk	ساق النبات
bath	حوض الاستحمام - حمام	bus	حافلة - أتوبيس
thunder	رعد	sunset	غروب الشمس
threaten	يتوعد - يهدد	sunny	مشمس

The lesson notes

► the High Line

هو عبارة عن متنزه أخضر يبلغ طوله حوالي 2.5 كيلو مترًا، وهو طريق أخضر كان في الماضي مسارًا لسكك حديد نيويورك المركزية، ويقع في الجانب الغربي من حيّ مانهاتن في مدينة نيويورك الأمريكية.

► 1980s

المقصود بإضافة حرف (s) في نهاية التاريخ هكذا هو الإشارة إلى فترة الثمانينيات، أي منذ بداية عام (1980) وحتى نهاية عام (1989).



Search

Hi Samer,

How are you? I'm well and New York is great! Our apartment block is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great view of the city.

New York has a lot of green spaces. There are also projects to create new parks and green spaces in parts of the city that no-one uses now, like the famous High Line – do you know about it?

Years ago, the High Line was a **railway line** ❶, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some **local residents** ❷ then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space, with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It's 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theatre performance, eat delicious food, do a yoga class or go running, or just **hang out** ❸ with your friends. I think it's my favorite place in New York. It **passes through** ❹ our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. It's really cool. Here is one of my photos of it.

How are things in Alexandria? I **miss** ❺ home. New York is very noisy all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.

There are lots of different restaurants here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. The restaurants in Alexandria are better. I think the food is fresher and tastes more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much!

Write soon and tell me all your news,

Wael

❶ خط سكة حديد

❷ السكان المحليون -
سكان المنطقة

❸ نخرج مع - نتسكع مع
- نقضي وقتاً مع

❹ يمر عبر

❺ يفتقد

The Selfish Giant

In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy



But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all the birds and bees fly away.

Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand, usually his garden is beautiful in spring. What is wrong? Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound. A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.

He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back through a hole in the garden wall. Now they are sitting in the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are opening around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.

But in one corner of the garden it is still winter. The giant sees a tiny boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly the giant understands everything. "Now I know why the spring didn't come," he says, "because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its branches and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," he says, "good Things happen."



في قرية في الريف، يعيش عملاق لديه حديقة خلّابة. وفي حديقته أشجار عالية وزهور جميلة وغطّاء أخضر ناعم. وطيور ملوّهة تغرّد على الأشجار وبحل على البنان. بعد ظهر كل يوم، وفي طريق عودتهم من المدرسة إلى المنزل، يأتي أطفال القرية للعب في حديقة العملاق. الحديقة الجميلة دائماً ما تجعل الأطفال سعداء.

لكن العملاق الأناني لا يريد مشاركة حديقته مع أحد، وفي أحد الأيام، قام ببناء جدار كبير حولها. والآن لا يأتي الأطفال إليها للعب. تمر الأيام، والحديقة دائماً فارغة وساكنة. ويبدأ العشب الأخضر يتحول ببطء إلى اللون البني، وتبدأ الأوراق في التساقط من الأشجار. ثم يبدأ الثلج يغطي الحديقة وتطير جميع الطيور الصغيرة والنحل بعيداً.

يحلّ الربيع على القرية، لكن لا يزال لشتاء سائداً في حديقة العملاق. كل شيء تحت الثلج. والعملاق لا يفهم، فعادّة ما تكون حديقته جميلة في الربيع. ما المشكلة؟ ثم في صباح أحد الأيام، يستيقظ ويسمع صوتاً حميلاً. طائر أزرق صغير يغني على شجرة بالخارج. ثم يسمع العملاق صوتاً جميلاً آخر - أطفال يضحكون.

ينظر العملاق من النافذة ويرى أن الأطفال قد عادوا من خلال ثقب في جدار الحديقة. الآن هم جالسون على الأشجار. نعود الأوراق على الأشجار إلى حصرها مرة أخرى، وتفتح أرهار حولها. يشعر العملاق بسعادة غامرة لرؤية حديقته تنمو مرة أخرى.

لكن لا يزال الشتاء سائداً في أحد أركان الحديقة. يرى العملاق صيلاً ضئيل الحجم يقف هناك. إنه أصغر من أن يستطيع تسلّق الشجرة. فجأة يفهم العملاق كل شيء. ويقول: "الآن أنا أعرف لماذا لم يأت الربيع، لأنني كنت أنانياً بشأن حديقتي". يخرج العملاق ويساعد الطفل الصغير على تسلّق الشجرة. فجأة، تفتح جميع الأوراق على الشجرة وتطير الطيور إلى أغصانها وتبدأ في الغناء. عندما لا تكون أناني تتحقق الأشياء الجيدة.



For True/False exercises, first read the sentences carefully. Underline the key words and look for similar words in the text. Compare the information in the sentences and in the text, then choose your answer. للإجابة على تمارين الصواب / الخطأ، اقرأ الجمل بعناية أولاً. مع خطاً تحت الكلمات الرئيسية وابحث عن كلمات مشابهة لها في النص. قارن المعلومات الواردة في الجمل والنص، ثم اختر إجابتك.

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

A

B

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. The lovely garden always | a) It's still winter. |
| 2. Our apartment is | b) to see his garden grow again. |
| 3. The giant feels so happy | c) makes the children happy. |
| 4. New York is very noisy, | d) and soft, green grass. |
| 5. In the garden, there are beautiful flowers | e) but Alexandria is much quieter |
| | f) on the sixteenth floor. |

2 Read and match "A" with "B":

A

B

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. To pass through means | a) people who live in a neighborhood. |
| 2. The railway line is | b) to spend time with, relax together. |
| 3. To hang out means | c) to go from one place to another. |
| 4. Local residents are | d) to feel sad that you can't have or see something. |
| 5. To miss means | e) a road for trains. |
| | f) is much quieter. |

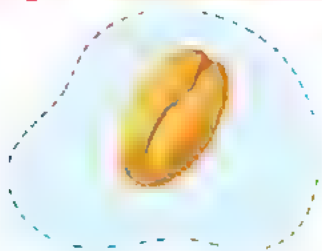
3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

create – famous – neighborhood – quieter – spaces

New York has a lot of green ① _____. There are also a lot of projects to ② _____ new parks and green areas in parts of the city that no one uses now, like the ③ _____ High Line. It passes through our ④ _____, so I often go there with my parents. It's really cool.

4

Read and complete the words with "th" or "s":



_eed



_ick



_ink



_ _row



_ _irsty



_ing

5

Read the following text and answer the questions below:

In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.



Choose the correct answer:

1. In his garden, there are tall (flowers - grass - trees).
2. The lovely garden always makes the children (angry - nappy - hungry).



Answer these questions:

3. Where does the giant live?
▶
4. What do the children do on their way home from school?
▶

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. spaces – has – New York – of green – a lot



2. Our – is – on the – apartment – fifth floor.



3. through – You – walk – can – the – gardens.



4. is – noisy – a – New York – very – city



5. There – many – aren't – in – parks – New York.



6. garden – happy – children – The lovely – the – makes.



7. giant – The – in – lives – village – a.



8. tall – the garden – are – There – in – trees.



7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what is wael's favorite place in new york



2. no i don't want any more candy



3. let's have a picnic in the park north of giza



4. can you give me the blue crayon please



8

Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A visit to Alexandria"

Ideas to help you:

last summer - Alexandria - parents - beaches - restaurants - library - enjoy - happy



Lesson 45 Writing & Project

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس

Donia's Email to her Friend Laila in Luxor



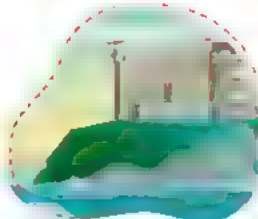
city center

وسط المدينة



the third floor

الطابق الثالث



in the distance

من بعيد - في الأفق



honey

عسل نحل



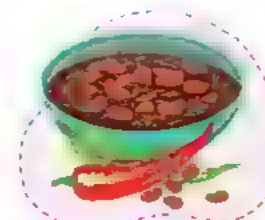
pretty yucky

مقرف (مقزز) للغاية



Scottish food

طعام إسكتلندي



Egyptian food

طعام مصري

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

infographic

مخطط معلومات بياني

interesting

ممتع - شيق - مثير للاهتمام

squares

ميادين

write back soon

راسلني قريباً

Countries and Famous Places

Egypt

مصر

The famous Edinburgh Castle

قلعه إدنبوره الشهيرة

Scotland

إسكتلندا

The Meadows Park

ميدوز بارك (منتزه ميدوز)

Luxor

مدينة الأقصر

How to write an email كيف تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني



The sender's email

البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

From: Donia@qwikmail.com

The receiver's email

البريد الإلكتروني للمستلم إليه

To: Laiia@egyptmail.com

The title of the email

عنوان لموضوع
رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

Subject: My new life in Scotland

Opening phrase

عبارة افتتاحية

Hi Laila,

How are things with you?

I'm finally in Scotland with Mom, Dad and Hani. It's really interesting!

Our apartment is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side ❶ of the street, so we have a great view over the trees ❷. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends ❸, so there's always something to see there. In the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh Castle ❹, too!

I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and especially the food! Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge ❺. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but it tastes pretty yucky ❻! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, ful medames! The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school and we study together and sometimes we watch TV – in English!

Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.

Lots of love,

Closing phrase

خاتمة

Donia

Signature

توقيع

❶ لجانب الآخر

❷ طلالة رائعة على الأشجار

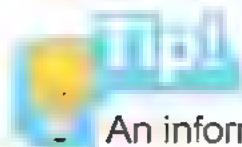
❸ مقابلة الأصدقاء

❹ قلعة - عاصمة - حساء الشعير

❺ مقرّر للغاية

The email body

نص رسالة البريد الإلكتروني



An informal email is a message you write to friends or family.

An informal email should be friendly in tone, use informal language, and include opening and closing phrases.

البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي هو رسالة تكتبها إلى أحد الأصدقاء أو فرد من العائلة. يجب أن يكون البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي ودودًا في نبرته، وأن نستخدم لغة غير رسمية فيه، وأن يتضمن عبارات افتتاحية وختامية.

■ Phrases from the email and their function in the text:

- Opening phrase ▶▶▶ Hi Laila
- Closing phrase ▶▶▶ Lots of love
- A question to reader ▶▶ How are things with you?
- A request to reader ▶▶ Please write back soon
- Informal expressions ▶▶ a really cool park, it tastes pretty yucky

Exercises on Lesson 4-5

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

A

B

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. People use the park a lot for | a) Egyptian food is better. |
| 2. Scottish food is OK, but | b) The weather and the Egyptian food. |
| 3. The people here are nice and | c) tell me all the news from home. |
| 4. What does she miss about Egypt? | d) Lots of love. |
| 5. Please write back soon and | e) sports and meeting friends. |
| | f) I have a lot of new friends. |

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

floor – apartment – view – street – sports

I'm finally in Scotland. Our ① _____ is in the city center. It's on the third ② _____ and the park is on the other side of the ③ _____, so we have a great ④ _____ over the trees. People use the park a lot for so many things, so there's always something to see there.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. are – How – with – things – you?

▶ ?

2. apartment – Our – is – the city – in – center.

▶

3. have – We – view – a great – over – the trees.

▶

4. use – for – the – park – meeting friends – People.

▶

5. people – porridge – Scottish – love – eating.

▶

6. have – I – of – friends – new – a lot.

▶

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i m finally in scotland

▶

2. what does she miss about egypt

▶

Test ① on Unit ①

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1

Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (234) آخر الكتاب.

1. Mini Forest plants trees in the middle of our (deserts – cities – roofs).
2. These special green areas help people enjoy (nature – work – crops).
3. They look after trees until they become a small (garden – park – forest).

2

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3Ms)

local residents – view – park – apartment

Samir : How are you, Wael?

Wael : I'm well, and New York is great!

Samir : Do you like your ① there?

Wael : Yes, so much. Our apartment is on the sixteenth floor, so we have a great ②

Samir : What can you see from your balcony?

Wael : I can see the High Line

Samir : What is it?

Wael : It's a big, long ③ in New York

3

Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. Uncle Hussein (usually go – goes usually – usually goes) to his work by bus.
2. How (many – old – often) does he play basketball?
▶ He plays basketball every day at school
3. Mr Samir (is always – always is – are always) helpful
4. I go out with my friends twice (some – a – the) week

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Maryam works in a community garden. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. They grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the market, too! They usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. Sometimes they also plant fruit trees. This year they have lemons and dates.



Choose the correct answer:

1. Maryam works in a community (park - zoo - garden) in her neighborhood.
2. The people who work there are all (volunteers - workers - gardeners)



Answer these questions:

3. What vegetables do they usually plant?
4. What fruit trees do they have this year?

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. grow – eat – to – We – vegetables.
2. friends – How often – your – see – you – do?
3. do – at Sham El Nessim – usually – do – What – you?

6

Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

- no i don't want to go to the club on monday

7

Write an email to your friend Yousef:

(5Ms)

Tell him about a trip you did in the summer holiday to one of the villages. Tell him about the different plants you saw there, the farm animals, and the friendly people you met. Your email address is magdy@school.net And your friend's email address is yousef@hotmail.com.

From

To

Subject



Test ② on Unit ①



نص الاستماع موجود صفحة (234) آخر الكتاب.

1

Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

1. In a (town – city – village – desert), in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden.
2. In his garden there are tall (flowers – grass – walls – trees).
3. Every (morning – afternoon – evening – night), the local children come to play in the giant's garden

2

Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

1. The _____ garden is a big green space on the roof of an apartment block
2. The people who work there are all volunteers from the _____.
3. They grow _____ to eat.

3

Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. She (usually go - goes usually- usually goes - go usually) to the club.
2. We go to Alexandria once (some - any - a - the) year.
3. How (many - much - old - often) do you work in the community garden?
▶ I work there every weekend
4. My parents (are rarely - rarely are - is rarely - have rarely) angry with me.

4

Read and match "A" with "B":

(5Ms)

A

B

1. In the garden, there are
2. There are lots of different restaurants here,
3. We need more volunteers
4. Do you want to come to my house?
5. People use the park a lot for

- a) Thanks, but I always help my aunt on Fridays.
- b) sports and meeting friends.
- c) birds singing in the trees.
- d) to join the Mini Forest organization!
- e) local communities.
- f) but the food doesn't taste like the food at home.

5

Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

The great forests of the world are very important. These forests are like oceans of trees. They are full of thousands of different kinds of plants and animals. However, we are cutting down the trees because we need wood and we need more land for food. So the world's forests are getting smaller. If these forests are cut down, a lot of plants and animals will disappear from the world. The land will look like deserts. Crops will not grow there. The weather will get very hot and the climate of the world will change.



Choose the correct answer:

1. We cut down trees because we need more (crops - wood - forests - fruit).
2. The world's forests are getting (bigger - larger - smaller - better).



Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?
4. What will happen to the climate if these forests disappear?

6

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. do - things - grow - What - you? ▶ ?
2. a lot of - Does - vegetables - your - produce - garden? ▶ ?
3. lives - family - Wael's - a tall - in - building. ▶

7

Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

- are dina and yasmin good at planting trees

8

Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"Parks"

Ideas to help you:

parks - important - green - people - walk - sports - read - paint - kites - keep - clean





Unit 2

We are all different

نحن جميعا مختلفون

In this unit I will

- listen, read, and write about people's personalities.
- make clear what people, places, and things I'm talking about using who, which, and where.
- describe my own and other people's feelings.
- say the sounds /ʌ/ and /æ/.
- write an paragraph explaining the positive and negative qualities of something.
- make a leaflet about your school.



Lesson 1 He's very clever

الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary

Adjectives



friendly

ودود



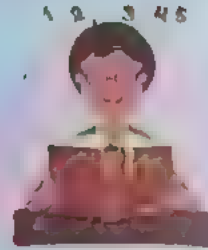
shy

خجول - خجلان



calm

هادئ



clever

ماهر شاطر



polite

مؤدب - مهذب



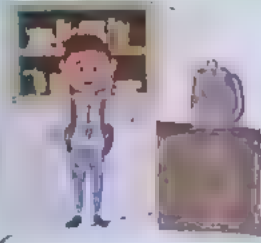
messy

فوضوي - غير مرتب



nervous

متوتر - قلق



organized

منظم

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

More adjectives

kind

عطوف - طيب

tidy

مرتب

nice

لطيف

intelligent

ذكي

funny

مضحك

quiet

هادئ

helpful

متعاون

relaxed

مسترخ - هادئ

careful

حذر - حريص

worried

قلق - قلقان

Other words

a bit nervous

متوتر قليلاً (بعض الشيء)

carefully

بحرص - يحدّر

Don't worry.

لا تقلق.

correctly

شكل صحيح

I'm not sure.

لست متأكداً.

show respect

يظهر احترام

break	استراحة - فُسحة	extra copy	نسخة إضافية
textbooks	كتب مدرسية	worksheets	ملارم دراسية - كراسة التدربات

Useful phrases

good at	ماهر في - جيد في	Welcome to	مرحبًا بك في
help with	يساعد في	at home	في البيت
worried about	قلق بشأن	Come on.	هيا، - تعال.
take you around	يحول بك - يأخذك في جولة	talk to	يتحدث مع (إلى) "شخص"
nice to others	لطيف مع الآخرين	talk about "something"	يتحدث عن "شيء"

Character traits

friendly	: nice to others, helpful
shy	: worried about talking to people, quiet
clever	: intelligent, good at school work
polite	: speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect
messy	: not tidy or organized
organized	: tidy, careful
nervous	: not calm, worried

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
look ينظر	looked	relax يسترخي	relaxed
ask يسأل	asked	paint يَلَوِّن	painted

listen	يسمع	listened
need	يحتاج	needed
help	يساعد	helped
start	يبدأ	started
talk	يتحدث	talked
offer	يعرض - يُقدّم	offered
laugh	يضحك	laughed

guess	يُحمن	guessed
stay with	يقيم مع	stayed with
share	يشارك - يشارك	shared
organize	يُنظّم	organized
like	يحب	liked
describe	يصف	described
worry	يقلق	worried

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
write	يكتب	wrote
read	يقرأ	read
do	يفعل	did
feel	يشعر	felt
get	يحصل على	got
take	يأخذ	took
find	يجد	found

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
go	يذهب	went
meet	يقابل	met
show	يظهر	showed
draw	يرسم	drew
speak	يتحدث	spoke
make	يصنع	made

Did you know?

هل تعلم؟

The way you move gives other people information about your personality. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting. People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

إن الطريقة التي تتحرك بها تؤثر على الآخرين معلومات عن شخصيتك. كل شخص لديه طريقة مختلفة في التحرك، تمامًا كما لكل منا خط يد فريد. الأشخاص الذين يتحركون بطرق متشابهة غالبًا ما يصبحون أصدقاء ويعملون معًا بشكل جيد.



Asser : Hi Hazem! I'm a bit nervous about everything OK?

Hazem : Hi Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel a bit nervous and shy.

Asser : Don't worry, we are all friendly. I can help you get to know the school.

Hazem : Really! Can you?

Asser : Sure. I can take you around. I'll show you my classroom and stay with you at lunch! Let's go meet some of my friends. Look! There's Basel. Hey, Basel!

Basel : Hi Asser!

Asser : Hazem, this is Basel. He's very clever and he's good at math. You can ask him if you need any help with your homework! Basel, this is Hazem. He's starting school here today.

Basel : Hi Hazem. Welcome to our school.

Asser : He's so polite!

Basel : Thanks! Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?

Hazem : I'm not sure. I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit messy. I'm not sure which textbooks I already have.

Basel : We can share my book today. And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...

Hazem : Wow! You're really organized. Thanks, Basel!

Asser : Come on, I'll show you where the science classroom is.

آسر : أهلاً يا حازم، أنا آسر. يبدو عليك القلق، هل كل شيء على ما يُرام؟

حازم : أهلاً يا آسر! إنه يومي الأول في المدرسة، وأشعر ببعض التوتر والخجل.

آسر : لا تقلق، نحن جميعًا ودودون. يمكنني مساعدتك على معرفة المدرسة.

حازم : حقًا! هل يمكنك ذلك؟

آسر : بالتأكيد. يمكنني أن آخذك في جولة، وأن أريك مكان فصلك، وأن أبقى معك في الفسحة! لنذهب ونلتق ببعض أصدقائي. انظر! هذا باسل. مرحبًا يا باسل!

باسل : أهلاً يا آسر.

آسر : حازم، هذا باسل. إنه ماهر جدًا، وهو جيد في الرياضيات. إذا احتجت إلى أي مساعدة في و جبك المنزلي، يمكنك أن تطلب منه! باسل، هذا حازم. وهذا أول يوم له هنا في المدرسة.

باسل : أهلاً يا حازم. مرحبًا بك في مدرستنا.

آسر : إنه مهذب جدًا!

باسل : شكرًا! هل حصلت على كل كتبك يا حازم؟

حازم : لست متأكدًا. لدي الكثير من الكتب في غرفتي في البيت، لكنني فوضوي بعض الشيء. لست متأكدًا أي من الكتب المدرسية لدي بالفعل.

باسل : يمكننا النشارك في كتابي اليوم. ولدي نسخة إضافية من كراسة التدريبات ...

حازم : مذهل! أنت منظم للغاية. شكرًا يا باسل!

آسر : هيا بنا، سأريك مكان فصل العلوم.

1 Read and complete the dialogues with the words in the box:

break • clever • nervous • friendly • shy

Asser : Hi, Hazem. I'm Asser. You look good. (1) _____

Hazem : Hi, Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel (2) _____ and shy.

Asser : Don't worry we are all (3) _____ to know the school.

Hazem : Really! Can you?

Asser : Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at (4) _____ of my friends. Look! There's Basel. Hey Basel!

Basel : Hi Asser!

Asser : Hazem, this is Basel. He's very (5) _____ and he's good at math.

Basel : Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

2 Read and match "A" with "B":

1. polite

a) worried about talking to people, quiet

2. messy

b) tidy, careful

3. organized

c) not calm, worried

4. nervous

d) speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect

5. friendly

e) not tidy or organized

6. clever

f) nice to others, helpful

7. shy

g) intelligent, good at school work

(3) Choose the correct answer:

1. Jana is very (helpful - nervous - shy). She always helps people.
2. Omar is very (messy - calm - funny). He makes me laugh all the time.
3. Salma is (tidy - friendly - careful). She likes talking to people.
4. John is (good - calm - bad) at art. He can draw and paint very well.
5. Hani is (nervous - polite - messy). He shows respect to everyone.
6. Salah is (kind - messy - friendly). There are lots of books and clothes on his bedroom floor.
7. I was (nervous - nice - noisy) on my first day at school because I didn't know anyone there.
8. Miss Amira is very (kind - worried - nervous). All the students love her.
9. He is very (nervous - clever - messy). He always gets the full mark.
10. We all keep (calm - worried - noisy) in the library.
11. My little sister is very (intelligent - organized - shy). She's always worried about talking to people.
12. My sister is always (nervous - messy - organized) and tidy.

(4) Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. Hazem - How - feel - does - today?
..... ?
2. are - very - all - friendly - We.
.....
3. I - bit - a - nervous - feel.
.....
4. all - Do - have - you - books - your?
..... ?
5. share - book - We - my - today - can.
.....
6. are - organized - really - You.
.....
7. shows - everyone - He - respect - to.
.....

8. has - Short - black - long - hair

Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what does mustafa look like?

2. school starts in september

3. do you like your new school?

4. don't forget to write your friend

5. how does mustafa feel today?

6. Write an email of (50) words to your friend Aliaa:

Tell her how you are doing, how you like your new school, your new friends, your new teachers, and your new life. Your friend's email address is aliaa@gmail.com.

Handwriting practice area for writing an email.

Unit 2 We are proud of our school!

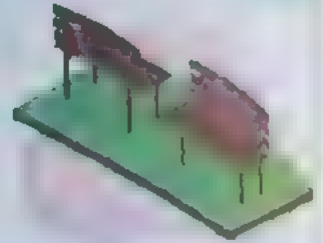
Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



Physical Education
(مادة التربية البدنية - الألعاب)



The West Court
(الملعب الغربي - الساحة الغربية)



benches
مقاعد



gymnasium
(مطلة الألعاب الرياضية)



gymnastics
(رياضة الجمباز)



Information Technology (IT)
(مادة تكنولوجيا المعلومات)



laboratories
(مختبرات - معامل)



do experiments
(يُجري تجارب)



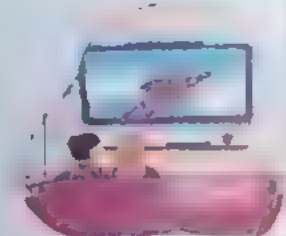
equipment
(تجهيزات - أدوات)



math department
(قسم الرياضيات)



tourist information website
(موقع معلومات سياحية)



fantasy TV series
(سلسلة تلفزيونية عن قصة خيالية)

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Welcome to	مرحبًا بكم في	find out	يكشف - يعرف
proud of	فخور بـ	look for	يبحث عن
popular with	محبوب لدى / يحظى بشعبية لدى	in the future	في المستقبل
interested in	مهتم بـ	on a planet	على كوكب

Other words

pharmacy	صيدلية	water fountain	نافورة ماء
medicine	دواء	open area	منطقة مفتوحة
alive (adj)	على قيد الحياة	playing field	ساحة اللعب
spaceship	سفينة فضائية	problem	مشكلة
all age groups	جميع الفئات العمرية	run	يدير

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs:

Present		Past		Present		Past	
mention	يذكر	mentioned		happen	يحدث	happened	
show	يُريه	showed		travel	يسافر	travelled	
contact	يتواصل - يتصل	contacted		love	يحب	loved	
borrow	يستعير	borrowed		live	يعيش	lived	
call	يُسمّي	called		decide	يُقرّر	decided	
return	يعود	returned		study	يُدرّس	studied	

Irregular verbs:

Present		Past		Present		Past	
find out	يكشف - يعرف	found out		buy	يشتري	bought	
grow	ينمو - يزرع	grew		tell	يُخبر	told	

Past			Present			Past		
run	تدبر	ran	find	تجد		found		
sit	يجلس	sat	hide	يختبئ		hid		
fly	بطينير - يسافر حوًا	flew	take place	يحدث		took place		

El Fouad School

[Home](#) [About](#) [Contact](#)

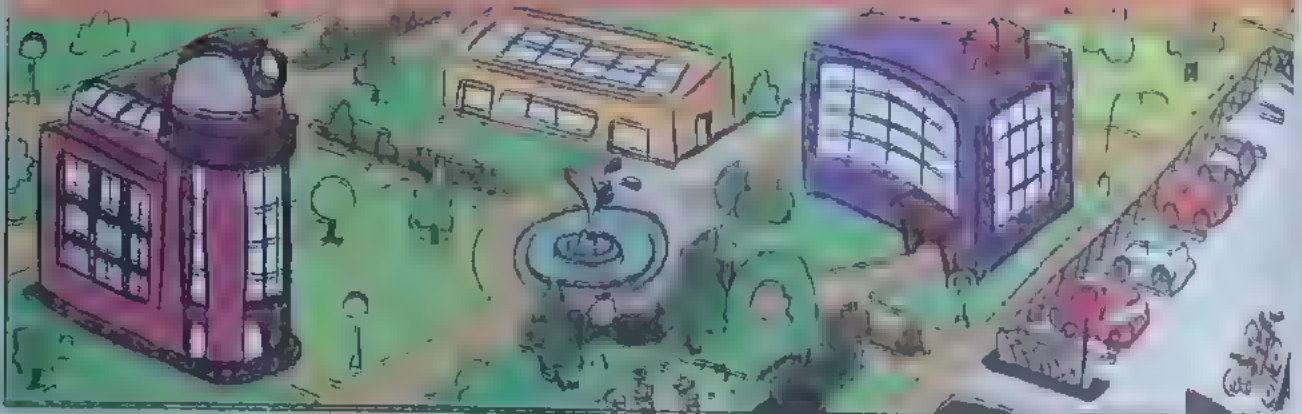
Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. We are proud of our new, modern buildings and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the map and find out where the main buildings are, and what we use them for.

1 The Ahmed Zewail Building

The laboratories have all the equipment which classes need to do experiments.

3 The IT Building

school sports
and tennis (M)



لصفحة الرئيسية عن المدرسة اتصل بنا

مرحباً بكم في مدرسة الفؤاد المكان الذي نحن فخورون به. نحن فخورون بمبانينا الجديدة والحديثة، ويسعدنا أن نعرضها لكم. برجاء دراسة الخريطة ومعرفة مكان المباني الرئيسية ولأي غرض نستخدمها.

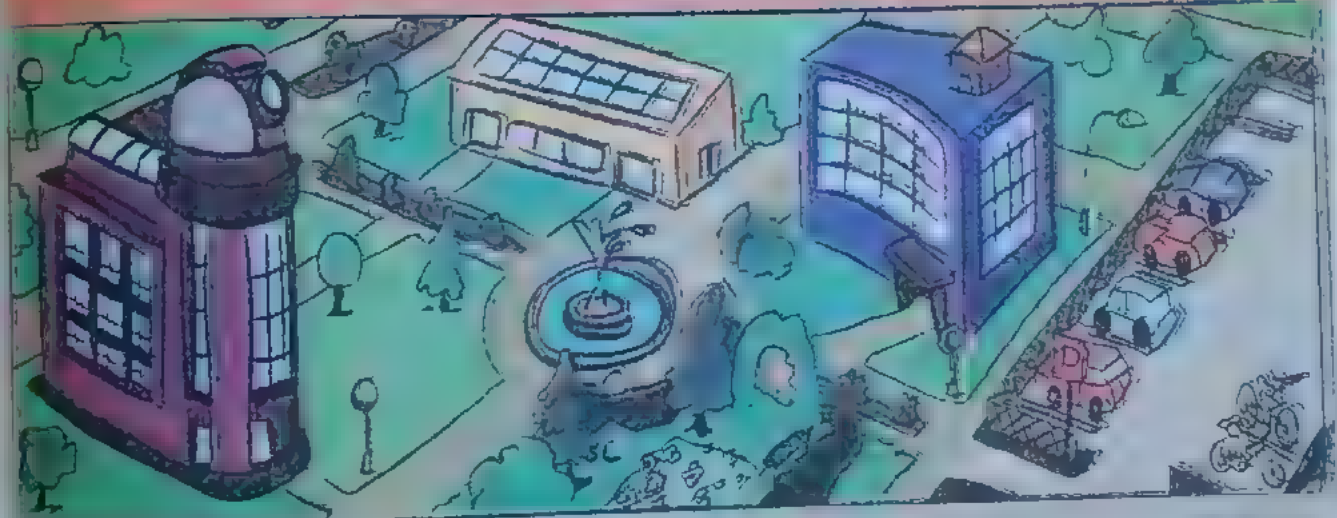
1 مبنى أحمد زويل

هذا هو المكان الذي يدرس فيه الطلاب العلوم. هناك أربعة فصول ومختبر علمي.

للمبنى أحمد زويل أربعة فصول ومختبر علمي. هذا هو المكان الذي يدرس فيه الطلاب العلوم. هناك أربعة فصول ومختبر علمي.

للمبنى أحمد زويل أربعة فصول ومختبر علمي. هذا هو المكان الذي يدرس فيه الطلاب العلوم. هناك أربعة فصول ومختبر علمي.

للمبنى أحمد زويل أربعة فصول ومختبر علمي. هذا هو المكان الذي يدرس فيه الطلاب العلوم. هناك أربعة فصول ومختبر علمي.



Listening Scripts



Wandaland is a fantasy TV series ① which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it takes place ② in the future on a planet ③ called Wanda. This is a world where humans ④ live because the Earth is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return ⑤ to Earth to look for ⑥ his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring ⑦. He doesn't have many friends, but he thinks perhaps his family is still alive ⑧, so he decides to hide ⑨ on a spaceship ⑩ which is travelling to Earth. The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them. I'm excited ⑪ to see what happens next!

- ① مسلسل تلفزيوني
- ② تدور أحداثه
- ③ على كوكب
- ④ البشر
- ⑤ يعود - يرجع
- ⑥ يبحث عن
- ⑦ مملة
- ⑧ لا يزال على قيد الحياة
- ⑨ يختبئ
- ⑩ سفينة فضائية
- ⑪ متحمس

GRAMMAR STUDY

Relative Clauses

Relative Pronouns

- We use **who**, **which**, and **where** to give more information about a particular person, thing, or place. We use these words for both singular and plural nouns.
- Remember when we use **who**, **which**, or **where**, we don't need to repeat the subject of the sentence.

who

used to talk about people.

نحل محل فاعل أو مفعول عاقل.

○ Mr Sergany is the teacher. **he** runs the football club.

▶ Mr Sergany is the teacher **who** runs the football club.

which

used to talk about things.

نحل محل فاعل أو مفعول غير عاقل.

○ These are the shoes. I wear **the** to school.

▶ These are the shoes **which** I wear to school.

where ► used to talk about places

تُستخدم لوصف أو نعرف مكان.

○ This is the building We do physical education in it.

► This is the building **where** we do physical education.

(ed) Adjectives & (ing) Adjectives

frightened (adj) مخيف

■ We use **(-ed)** adjectives to describe how a person feels.

■ الصفة المنتهية بـ **(ed)** تُستخدم لوصف شعور شخص ما (في الغالب تُستخدم لوصف عاقل).

► I am excited!

► She is interested in science.

frightening (adj) مخيف

■ We use **(-ing)** adjectives to describe people or things that give us feelings.

■ الصفة المنتهية بـ **(ing)** تُستخدم لوصف الشيء الذي جعل الشخص يشعر بشعور ما (في الغالب تُستخدم لوصف غير العاقل).

► The football game is exciting.

► This TV show is really interesting.

♦ نفس الأمر ينطبق على الصفات الآتية:

صفات	صفات	صفات	صفات
bored	شاعر بالملل	boring	مُمل
frightened	خائف	frightening	مخيف
tired	متعب	tiring	متعب
worried	قلق - قلقان	worrying	مُقلق
excited	سعيد - متحمس	exciting	مثير
surprised	متفاجئ	surprising	مُفاجئ
interested	مهتم	interesting	ممتع شئ مُسوق
amazed	مدهش	amazing	مدهش

1

Read and match "A" with "B":

A

B

1. This is the place where students
2. These laboratories have all the equipment which
3. This is a large open area where
4. He is the teacher who
5. This is the building where
6. We have laptops and tablets which
7. There are some teachers who

- a) students have break.
- b) students can borrow.
- c) study science.
- d) run after-school sports clubs here too.
- e) you can find our new computer classrooms.
- f) helps in the garden.
- g) students need to do experiment

2

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box

study - school - open area - equipment - lessons

Evan : Good Morning, Clara!

Clara : Good Morning, Evan.

Evan : Do you want to see my ①

Clara : Of course, that will be so much fun.

Evan : Let me show you the classrooms and our laboratories.

Clara : What do you ② .. in these laboratories?

Evan : We study science there; we have all the ③ ..
classes need to do experiments.

Clara : Wow! That's awesome.

Evan : We also have a large ④ .. where we enjoy our

Clara : Great! Your school is amazing, Evan. I love it!

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fountain - fields - area - benches - break

This is the West Court. It is a large open ① _____ where students have ② _____. There is a playground and playing field. There are also ③ _____ to sit on under the trees and a water ④ _____ if you feel thirsty. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

4 Choose the correct answer: **who - which - where**

1. Dalia is the girl (which - who - where) sits next to me in the English class.
2. An ostrich is a big bird (which - who - where) can't fly.
3. This is the street (which - who - where) my uncle lives.
4. I really love the red flowers (which - who - where) grow in our garden.
5. The supermarket is the place (which - who - where) we buy food.
6. Hany is a boy in my class (which - who - where) has a pet lizard.
7. These are the computers (which - who - where) we use for our projects.
8. Bees are the insects (which - who - where) make honey.
9. A pharmacy is a shop (which - who - where) you can buy medicine.
10. That is another classroom (which - who - where) we have science lessons.
11. Leila is the tall girl (which - who - where) has red hair.
12. This is a new video game (which - who - where) is very popular with young children.

5 Choose the correct answer: **(ed) & (ing) adjectives**

1. Hi Fareeda, I'm (surprised - surprising) to see you!
2. The results of the students' last test are (surprised - surprising).
3. The children feel (bored - boring) when there is nothing to do.
4. He is (bored - boring) with his work. He wants to change it.
5. His birthday party was (excited - exciting).
6. They were (excited - exciting) on watching the match.

7. I'm really (interested - interesting) in Ancient Egypt.
 8. The history of Ancient Egypt is really (interested - interesting).
 9. My dad was really (tired - tiring) last night
 10. My dad's work is very (tired - tiring)

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. modern - We - are - our - proud of - buildings.

2. is - This - a large - area - open.

3. do - study - you - Arabic - Where?

4. to - surprised - see - you - I'm!

5. in - She - interested - science - is.

6. loves - using - all the - laptops - time - He.

7. English - my - school - favorite - subject - is.

8. math - your - is - Who - teacher?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. kareem is a clever boy

2. do you like your school amgad

3. who is your math teacher

4. my parents take me to the park every friday

5. when does manal wake up for school

Lesson 3 Reading & Pronunciation

Main Vocabulary



(forest) الغابة



(lake) بحيرة



(hare) أرنب



(mouse) فأر



(stomach) معدة



(noise) ضجيج



(loud voice) صرخة عالية



(brave) شجاع

Extra Vocabulary

Characters of the Story

Hare	الأرنب	Elephant	الفيل
Monkey	القرود	Mouse	الفأر

Prepositions

run back home	العودة إلى المنزل	come in	يأتي
run out	يخرج راجداً	look at	ينظر إلى
run away	يفرّ - يهرب	afraid of	خائف من
get to	يصل إلى	scared of	مرتعب من
go back	يرجع	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة



Estimating Numbers

calculate	حسب	approximate number	عدد تقريبي
measure	قيس	decimal number	عدد عشري
measurements	مقاسات	whole number	عدد صحيح - رقم صحيح
estimate	يُقدّر - يُخمن - يُقِيم	round up	يُقرّب، للرقم الأكبر
multiply	يضرب (حسابيًا)	round down	يُقرّب للرقم الأصغر

When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an approximate number. We can round decimal numbers up or down to the nearest

whole number: $2.66 \rightarrow 3.00$ $3.95 \rightarrow 4.00$

عندما لا نحتاج إلى أن نحسب بدقة، فإننا نُقدّر رقمًا تقريبيًا. يمكننا تقريب الأعداد العشرية للأكبر أو للأصغر لأقرب رقم صحيح:

$2.66 \rightarrow 3.00$ $3.95 \rightarrow 4.00$

Remember

تذكر

► If the digit in the tenths is 5 or more, then we'll round up to the nearest whole number:

◀ لو كان الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية (5) فما فوق، نقوم بتقريب الرقم العشري إلى الرقم الصحيح الأكبر.

13.95 becomes 14.

► If the digit in the tenths is less than 5, then we round down to the nearest whole number:

◀ لو كان الرقم بعد العلامة العشرية أقل من (5)، نقوم بتقريب الرقم العشري إلى الرقم الصحيح الأصغر.

134.3 becomes 134.

Pronunciation



/æ/

/æ/

cut (v)	يقص	cat	قط
truck	شاحنة	track	مسار / طريق
hut	كوخ	hat	قبعة
bug	حشرة	bag	كيس
stuck (adj)	عالق	stack (n)	كومة
uncle	عم - خال	ankle	كاحل
hungry	جائع	animal	حيوان
funny	مضحك	angry	غاضب
nuts	مكسرات	happy	سعيد
duck	بطة	has (v)	لديه - عنده
brush (n)	فرشاة	Harry	هاري (اسم)
stomach	معدة	and	و (أداة العطف)
come (v)	يأتي	a	أداة تنكير
some	بعض	an	أداة تنكير
honey	عسل	mat	سجادة - بساط

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present	Past
remember	يتذكر	remembered	laugh	يضحك / ضحك
stay	يبقى - يظل	stayed	look	ينظر
shout	يصرخ	shouted	live	يعيش
open	يفتح	opened	move	يتحرك
				laughed
				looked
				lived
				moved

Present	ماضي	مضارع
jump	قفز	تقفز
start	بدأ	تبدأ
love	أحببت	أحب
cry	بكت	تبكي
	jumped	loved
	started	cried

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

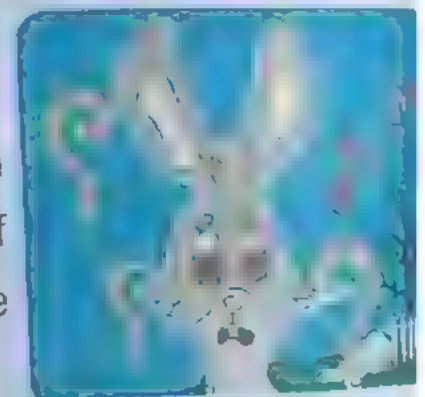
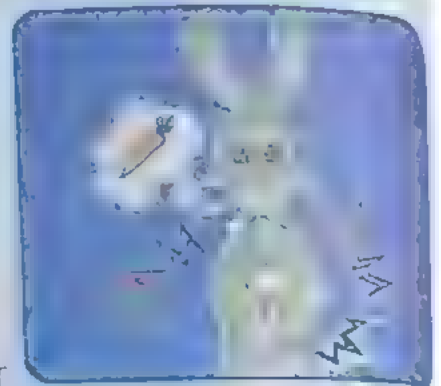
ماضي	مضارع	ماضي	مضارع
make	اصنع - يجعل	made	يصل إلى
run back	تجري عائدا	ran back	يتحدث
come in	يدخل	came in	يرى
go back	يعود	went back	يُخبر
write down	يُذوّن	wrote down	نمّر
		get to	got to
		speak	spoke
		see	saw
		tell	told
		think	thought

Read and learn

It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. Suddenly, her stomach makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's hungry!

Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops. What is that noise? Something is moving inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asks Hare.

"Stay where you are!" says a loud voice. Hare is very surprised. Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite food."



Hare is very scared. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend Monkey lives.

"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare. "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"

Monkey looks interested. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.

They go back to Hare's house. "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey.

A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in. Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also delicious."

Monkey and Hare look at each other. They are both very scared. They run to the lake where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!"

"Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody can eat me!"

Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.

"Stop!" says the animal inside. "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."

"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest..."

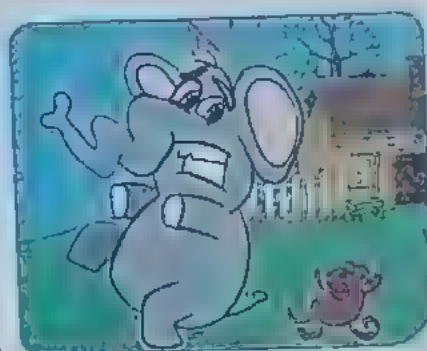
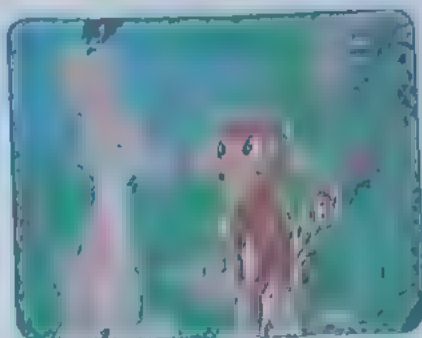
Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice!

"Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries Elephant and he quickly runs away.

Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry," she says. "Are you angry?"

Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say. "Elephant's face was so funny!"

They all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.





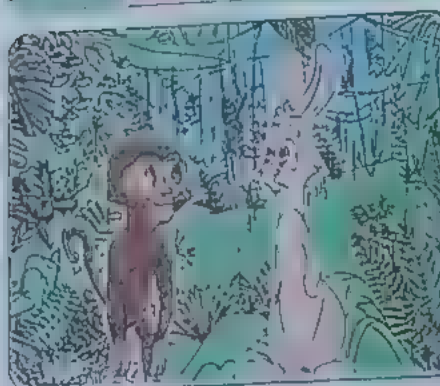
إنه يوم ممس، والأرنب البرية مسلقته على العشب،
ومعاًه تُضرر بطنها صوتاً عالياً. تذكر الأرنب البرية الخبز
الموجود في مطبخها. إنها جائعة!



يجري الأرنب البرية عائدة إلى منزلها. لكن عندما تصل إلى
بابها، تتوقف. ما هذه الضوضاء؟ سبب ما يتحرك داخل
منزلها! نسأل الأرنب البرية قائلة: "هل يوجد أحد في الداخل؟"
يرد صوت مرتفع من الداخل قائلاً: "ابقِ حيث أنتِ!"



الأرنب البرية مندهشة للغاية. من الموجود في بيتها؟ ثم
تتكلم الصوت مرة أخرى. "أيتها الأرنب البرية، لا تدخل. إذا
دخلت، سوف آكلك. فالأرانب البرية هي طعامي المفضل."



أرنب البرية خائفة جداً. الحيوان الذي في بيتها يريد أن
يأكلها. تجري الأرنب البرية إلى الغابة حيث يعيش صديقها
الذكي القرد.

يقول الأرنب البرية: "أيها القرد، ساعدني من فضلك! هناك
حيوان في منزلي، وهو يريد أن يأكلني!"

يسعد القرد مهتماً، ويقول: "حيوان؟ دعينا نذهب ونرى."
يعودان إلى منزل الأرنب البرية. يصيح القرد قائلاً: "من
هناك؟"

يرد صوت قائلاً: "أيها القرد، لا تدخل. سأأكلك إن دخلت.
الأرانب البرية هي طعامي المفضل، لكن القردة لذيذة
أيضاً."

يسطر القرد والأرنب البرية إلى بعضهما. كلاهما خائفان جداً. ويركضان إلى البحيرة حيث
يعيش صديقهما الفيل. يقولان للفيل: "هناك حيوان يأكل الأرانب البرية والقردة في
منزل الأرنب البرية. نحن نحاج مساعدتك!"

يقول الفيل: "لا تقلقوا! أنا قادم! أنا أضخم وأقوى وأشجع حيوان في العالم. لا أحد
يستطيع أن يأكلني!"

يذهب الفيل إلى منزل الأرنب البرية. ويصيح قائلاً: "سأدخل."
يقول الحيوان الذي بالداخل: "توقف! أنا جائع وأنا أحب أن أكل ..."
يصيح الفيل قائلاً: "لا يمكنك أن تأكلني! أنا أضخم وأقوى ..."



الجميع، القبيلة بخاف من الفئران
صرخ الفيل وهو يهرب بسرعة: "ساعداني يا فأرة! فأرة!"
تنظر الفأرة إلى الأرنبة السرية والمرد، ونقول: "أنا آسفة، هل
أنتما غاضبان؟"

وجه الفيل كان مضحكًا جدًا!
أنتما غاضبان؟

وجه الفيل كان مضحكًا جدًا!



When characters speak in stories, we show it with punctuation called quotation marks:

"Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!"

We put quotation marks before and after the sentence.

We use verbs like say, shout, and ask to say who is speaking.

"Is somebody there?" **asked** Monkey.

"No, we are not angry," **said** Hare and Monkey.

علامات تحدث الشخصيات في القصص، نبين ذلك بعلامة (نستخدم علامات التنصيص):

"Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!"

نضع علامة التنصيص قبل وبعد الجملة

ونستخدم أفعال مثل (say - shout - ask) ليقول من المتحدث.

"Is somebody there?" **asked** Monkey.

"No, we are not angry," **said** Hare and Monkey.

Exercises on Lesson

1 Read and write the following words in the correct column:

cut - track - truck - hungry - hat - funny - angry -
happy - ruts - bag - duck - brush - mat - animal

/æ/

/ʌ/

<p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>	<p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>
------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

2 Round the following numbers to the nearest whole number:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| ① 2.03 → | ② 12.96 → |
| ③ 1.11 → | ④ 4.71 → |
| ⑤ 24.56 → | ⑥ 19.39 → |
| ⑦ 8.09 → | ⑧ 41.65 → |
| ⑨ 31.68 → | ⑩ 87.24 → |

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculates how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need. Each can covers 22 square meters, so the students need 2 cans (44 square meters) to cover 42 square meters. They will have at least 20 liters left over.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Each can covers (44 - 42 - 22) square meters.
- The opposite of the word "much" is (a little - more - many - a few).

B Answer these questions:

3. How much paint does the class need to paint the walls?

▶

4. How many liters of paint will they have left over?

▶

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. weather - The - is - today - sunny.

▶

2. Something - moving - the - is - house - inside

▶

3. is - the - inside - house - Who?

▶

4. runs - the - to - Hare - forest.

▶

5. my - an - There's - in - animal - house.

▶

6. Elephants - mice - afraid - are - of!

▶

7. her - hears - inside - a noise - house - Hare.

▶

5 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"An interesting story I read"

Ideas to help you:

- What's this story? - When did you read it?
- Who are the characters? - What or who do you like best in the story?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



cat قطة



bird طائر



lizard سحلية



fish سمكة



pet (v)(n) يُذَلِّل - يداعب - حيوان أليف



soft fur فرو ناعم



sharp claws مخالب حادة



keep ي (ح)وا (نات)



independent مستقل - معتمد على ذاته



well-being سعادة - سلامة نفسية



positive points نقاط إيجابية



negative point لاط سلبية

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

touch

يلمس

touched

include

يشمل - يتضمن

included

need

يحتاج

needed

use

يستخدم

used

walk

يمشي

walked

like

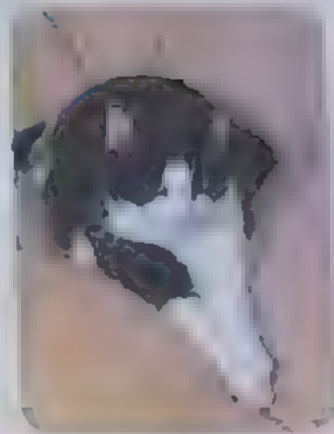
يحب

liked

Read and learn

Cats Are the Best Pets

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared. People also say that when you pet a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.



القطط هي حيوانات المفضل، وأعتقد أنها أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة. إنها جميلة ولها مرو ناعم لصوف الملمس. إنها حيوانات نظيفة وهادئة، وعادةً ما تكون ودودة. وهي تب البشر ولكنها حيوانات مستقلة، لذلك لا يلزم أخذها في نزهة يوميًا. صحيح أن القطط لديها محالب وأسنان حادة، لكنها لا تستخدمها إلا عندما يكون خائفة. يقول الناس أيضًا أنه عندما تداعب قطرة، فهذا يجعلك سعيدًا. لذا فالقطط مفيدة لراحتك النفسية أيضًا.

GRAMMAR STUDY

but لكن

■ You can use "but" to join two contrasting ideas in a sentence. For example, you can mention a negative point, then use but to explain why it's not really a problem.

■ يمكنك استخدام "لكن" للربط بين فكرتين متناقضتين في جملة. على سبيل المثال، يمكنك ذكر نقطة سلبية، ثم استخدام "لكن" لشرح سبب عدم كونها مشكلة.

but

تستخدم لربط جملتين يعبران عن التناقض.

○ It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

Connect 6

Exercises on Lessons 1-6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

soft - walk - friendly - eat - pets

Cats are my favorite animals, and I think they are the best **1**.
They are friendly **2** for which is nice to touch.
They are easy **3** and so usually **3**.
They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take care **4** every day.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. Cats are my favorite animals and I think they are the best (pets - insects - birds).
2. Cats have (soft - sharp - hard) fur which is nice to touch.
3. Cats are (easy - independent - tiring). You don't need to take them for a walk every day.
4. Cats have (soft - sharp - blunt) claws and teeth. Don't make them hurt.
5. People say that when you (pet - eat - kick) a cat, this makes you and the cat happy.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. are - favorite - my - animals - Cats.
2. are - pets - Fish - best - the.
3. fur - Soft - is - to - nice - touch.
4. I - keep - pet - love to - clean - my.
5. claws - have - Cats - sharp - and teeth.
6. favorite - writes - Hany - about - pet - his.

7. Dogs - pets - are - friendly - very.
8. love to - do - people - pets - keep - Why?
9. want - the - to - We - beach - go to
10. polite - is - and - Dalia - clever.

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. this is arwa s lovely pet
2. no we don t need to go to the school on saturday
3. mohamed salah is a famous footballer
4. what s your favorite animal
5. those aren t my shoes

5 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"My favorite pet"

Ideas to help you:

- What is it?
- What does it eat?
- Where does it sleep?
- How do you pet it?
- What are the positive and negative points of having a pet?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

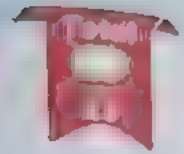
.....

.....



Test (3) on Unit (2)

خاص بالأزهر الشريف



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

عن الأهل والأصدقاء

1. The west court is the large open area (who - which - where - when) students spend time outside.
2. There are also (chairs - seats - benches - desks) to sit on under the trees.
3. Children can also grow (trees - flowers - seeds - plants) with Mr Mahdi.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3Ms)

afraid - brave - interested - interesting

Radwa : Did you like the story of Hare?

Amany : Yes. I think it's ① .

Radwa : Why was Hare ②?

Amany : Because there was an animal in her kitchen, and it wanted to eat her.

Radwa : Which character did you like best?

Amany : I liked Elephant. He's ③ , but he's very funny. He made me laugh.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. The fridge is a place (which - where - who - when) we keep our foods and drinks.
2. Dad bought me a new mobile. This was (surprised - surprising - surprised - bored).
3. Hagar is a girl in my class (which - where - who - when) is polite and clever.
4. He wants to go out with his friends, (and - so - because - but) he has a lot of homework.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Hello! My name is Amr. Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, but they only use them when they are scared.

Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the word 'sharp' is (soft - hard - ugly).
2. Cats are beautiful with soft (eyes - teeth - fur).

Answer these questions:

3. Why does Amr like cats?
4. When do cats use their sharp claws and teeth?

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. Hazem - How - feel - does - today?
2. like - you - do - school - Which - subjects?
3. new - My - school - great - is.

?

?

6

Punctuate the following sentence:

(1Ms)

- yes we are going to the zoo on thursday

7

Write an email of (50) words to your friend Yousef:

(5Ms)

"My school"

like - meet - friends - big - classrooms - laboratories -
gymnasium - open area - playing fields





Test ④ on Unit ②



نص الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1

Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

1. The IT Building is the building where you can find our (IT - radio - computer - mobile) classrooms.
2. Students come here for their information (Science - English - Math - Technology) lessons.
3. We have over (40 - 50 - 60 - 70) computers.

2

Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

1. The Ahmed Zewail Building is the place where students study
2. There are four classrooms and two new
3. There's all the equipment which classes need to do

3

Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. This is the boy (which - who - where) becomes my new neighbor.
2. The park is a place (which - who - where) he flies his kite.
3. They are (interesting - surprised - interested) in doing experiments.
4. These are the vegetables (where - which - who) my mom bought today.

4

Read and match "A" with "B":

(5Ms)

A

B

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. What is the weather like in July? | a) A small mouse. |
| 2. My dad likes his work, | b) 4. |
| 3. We can round the number 4.32 to | c) all the equipment. |
| 4. Who is in Hare's house? | d) 5. |
| 5. These laboratories have | e) but it's very tiring. |
| | f) It's very hot. |

5

Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Some people like to keep pets at their homes. If you are one of those, you should choose one that is right for your family and your home. If you live in a house with a garden, then a dog would be a good pet for you. Dogs need

the garden for exercise. Dogs are very good guards. The dog is well known for loving its owner.

Cats live happily in flats. An aquarium full of fish is fun to watch. There are many different types of fish that live happily together. Remember that they need plants to make oxygen, and the aquarium always needs to be clean. Whatever pet you choose, you should love and care for it. You have to feed it. Your pet will love you in return.

Choose the correct answer:

1. (Two - Three - Four - Five) types of pets are mentioned in the passage.
2. The underlined word "well known" means (angry - naughty - famous - sharp).

Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?
4. What should you do for your pet?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(4Ms)

1. shoes - These - the - are - I - wear - which - to school ▶
2. does - Amr - What - like? ▶
3. Mr Mahdi - with - Children - grow - can - plants. ▶

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

- what is the weather like in egypt in january ▶

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Hagar:

(5Ms)

Tell her about your school rooms, and what you do in every room. Tell her also about the school open areas and playgrounds, and where you spend your break, and what you do then. Your email address is sarah@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is hagar@gmail.com.

From :

To :

Subject :

.....
.....
.....



Unit 3

Vacation plans

خطة الإجازة

In this unit I will

- listen, read, research, and write about making vacation plans
- talk about facts using clauses with **if** or **when**.
- talk about when something happens using prepositions of time.
- read and listen to determine the central message.
- practice saying the initial consonant sounds /w/ and /v/.
- write a blog about a place you like visiting.
- research and make a brochure about a vacation destination

Lesson

1

Let's go quad biking on Tuesday

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



vacation

إجازة - عطلة



quad biking

ركوب دراجات رباعية
(ذات أربعة إطارات)



hotel

فندق



explore the souks

نستكشف الأسواق



take photos

نلتقط صور



rollercoaster

قطار الملاهي

Places

Cairo

القاهرة Manial Palace Museum

متحف قصر المنيل

Giza

الجيزة Bab Zuweila minaret

مئذنة باب رويلة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

view

فمنظر - مشهد - إطلالة

sunset

عروب الشمس

top

قمة

the theme park

مدينه الملاهي

look interesting

يبدو ممتعًا

Cool!

رائعًا

Connect 6

Prepositions

excited about	متحمس لـ / متحمس بشأن	on Sunday	في يوم الأحد
come back	يعود - يرجع	on Wednesday	في يوم الأربعاء
in about 30 minutes	في غضون 30 دقيقة	in the morning	في الصباح

Did you know?

عن العالم

When you see it from the air, the Nile valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between desert cliffs, it is narrow.



عندما تراه من الجو، يكون وادي النيل على شكل مروحة. في الشمال، حيث يتسع وادي النيل ليشمل الدلتا، فهو يكون واسعًا. وفي الجنوب، حيث يمر وادي النيل بين المنحدرات الصحراوية، فهو يكون ضيقًا.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
visit	يزور	visited		want	يُريد	wanted	
watch	يشاهد	watched		plan	يُخَطِّط	planned	
look	يبدو - انظر	looked		love	يحب	loved	
ask	يسأل - يطلب	asked		arrive	يصل	arrived	
climb	يتسلق	climbed		explore	يستكشف	explored	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

choose	اختار	chose
go	ذهب	went
get	حصل على	got
leave	مغادر - يترك	left
take	أخذ	took

ride	ركب	rode
eat	أكل	ate
do	فعل	did
come	جاء	came
say	قال	said

Read and learn

Planning vacation



Samer : I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel.

Basel : Me too! Why don't we try new places? We can travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.

Samer : Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

Basel : Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museums. Let's also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!

Samer : Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

Basel : Like what?

Samer : We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

Basel : Great! We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening.

Samet : Yes. What else can we do?

Basel : Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we are there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

Samet : Cool! And in the morning, we can explore the Souks! They're near the Minaret.

Basel : Great! Cairo here we come!



سامر : أنا متحمس لغطائتنا هذا الأسبوع يا باسل.

باسل : وأنا أيضًا! لم لا نُجرب زيارة أماكن جديدة؟ يمكننا الذهاب إلى القاهرة، فهناك العديد من الأشياء التي يمكن رؤيتها هناك.

سامر : نعم. يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل أولاً. إذا ذهبنا إلى المتحف يوم الأحد، يمكننا التقاط صور يوم الاثنين من أجل مشروع المدرسي.

باسل : حسنًا، هذا رائع! يمكن لأمي أن تذهب معنا، فهي تحب المتاحف. دعنا نذهب أيضًا إلى مدينة الملاهي ونركب قطار الملاهي!

سامر : حسنًا! لنفعل ذلك يوم الثلاثاء. هناك أيضًا بعض الأماكن التي تبدو مَشوّقة خارج القاهرة.

باسل : مثل ماذا؟

سامر : يمكننا أن نذهب لركوب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء في الجزيرة. إذا استقللنا الحافلة سنصل في حوالي 30 دقيقة.

رائع! يمكننا الذهاب لأحد أيام يوم الأربعاء والعودة للفندق قبل المساء.

تامر : أجل، ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل غير ذلك؟

دعاء : يمكننا الذهاب إلى جولة يوم الخميس إن سلمها طبعاً، لكن المنظر من الأعلى جميل للغاية. إذا ذهبنا إلى هناك آخر النهار، يمكننا مشاهدة غروب الشمس على المدينة.

رائع! ومع ذلك، يمكننا استئجار الأسوار إذا أردنا من المدينة.

باسم : عظيم! ها نحن قادمون أينها القاهرة!

الترجمة

الترجمة

■ We can make suggestions by using:

■ يمكن اقتراح شيء ما بعدة طرق منها:

Let's + المصدر

المصدر +

هيا بنا

Why don't we + المصدر

المصدر +

لما لا

Should we + المصدر

المصدر +

هل ينبغي علينا أن / هل يجب أن

○ Let's go to the theme park.

○ Why don't we try new places?

○ Should we explore the souks?

■ عند الموافقة على الاقتراح يمكن استخدام تعبيرات مختلفة مثل:

Okay, cool!

Great! حسناً، رائعاً

رائعاً

Okay.

Good idea! حسناً.

مكرة جيدة

Exercises on Lesson

1

Read and match " " with " ".

1. Let's go to the theme park

You can go to the

3. How long does it take?

There are also some places
outside Cairo5. Let's climb the Bab Zuweila
minaret.

a) About 30 minutes.

b) Great, cool!

c) The view from the top is beautiful.

d) What else do you want?

e) biking in the desert!

f) that look interesting.

2

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box

ride - Museum - biking - places - photos

Samer : I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel.**Basel** : Me too! Why don't we try new ⁽¹⁾ travel to Cairo. There are lots to see there.**Samer** : Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace ⁽²⁾**Basel** : Okay, cool! My mom can go with us. She loves museums.
Let's also go to the theme park and ⁽³⁾ rollercoaster!**Samer** : Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places
outside Cairo that look interesting.**Basel** : Like what?**Samer** : We can go quad ⁽⁴⁾ in the desert in Giza.
we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.**Basel** : Great! We can go early and come back to the hotel before
evening.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Let's (visited - visits - visit) the Manial Palace Museum.
2. We can (explore - take - choose) the Souks.
3. Why don't we (try - tries - tried) new places?
4. You can go (swimming - diving - quad biking) in the desert!
5. Let's go there and (ride - drive - climb) on a rollercoaster.
6. In the late afternoon we can watch the (sunset - sunrise - moon light) over the city.
7. Let's (arrive - walk - climb) the Bab Zuweila minaret.
8. I choose what to do (at - in - on) Thursday.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. excited - vacation - I'm - about - our.
▶
2. places - new - don't - try - Why - we?
▶ ?
3. Manial Palace - We - the - can - visit - Museum.
▶
4. beautiful - The - is - from - view - the top.
▶
5. can - We - in the desert - quad biking - go.
▶
6. in - We - about 30 minutes - will - arrive.
▶

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. should we explore the souks on monday
▶
2. are there interesting places in cairo
▶
3. let s go to sharm el-sheikh on monday
▶
4. do you enjoy your vacation
▶
5. no i can t go to giza by bike
▶
6. why don't we visit the egyptian museum on thursday
▶

6 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Mustafa:

Tell him about your vacation, the new places you visit, and how you enjoy your time. Your email address is amir@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is mustafa@school.net.

From :
To :
Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



regular breaks
فترات راحة منتظمة



company
شركة



discount (n)
خَصْم



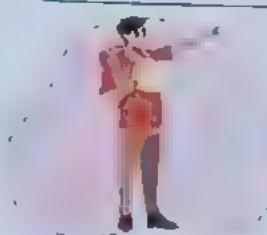
book (v)
يُحجِز



tour
جولة (سياحية)



bank details
تفاصيل بنكية



guide
مُرشد



trip
رحلة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

less time	وقت أقل	credit card	بطاقة ائتمان
more time	وقت أطول	study time	وقت المذاكرة
problem	مشكلة	row	صف
dictionary	قاموس	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر
properly	بصورة صحيحة - كما ينبغي - بشكل مناسب	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
cheaper	أرخص	dust	غبار
tips	نصائح	stomach ache	مغص (ألم بالمعدة)

Prepositions

pay for	يدفع مقابل	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
listen to	يستمع إلى	at the end	في النهاية

get up
look up
turn it down

at home
switch off
talk about

في البيت
يُطفئ (يُغلق) (القوة)
يتحدث عن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
book	booked	check off	checked off
switch on	switched on	block	blocked
switch off	switched off	happen	happened
turn on	turned on	prefer	preferred
water	watered	plan	planned
press	pressed	travel	traveled
heat	heated	study	studied
melt	melted	try	tried
last	lasted	die	died
finish	finished	celebrate	celebrated
remember	remembered	concentrate	concentrated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
cost	cost	catch	caught
mean	meant	eat	ate
pay	paid	meet	met
sit	sat	get up	got up
choose	chose	know	knew
find	found	write	wrote
get better	got better	give	gave
tell	told	feel	felt

GRAMMAR STUDY

Lesson 2

The Zero Conditional (If)

If

إذا / متى

When

عندما

If (When) + present simple

present simple / (can) + inf

If (When) + مضارع بسيط

المصدر + (can) / مضارع بسيط

■ We use clauses with "if" or "when" + present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can", to talk about facts or things that are usually true.

■ نستخدم حالة (If) الصفرية أو (When) للتعبير عن حقائق أو أشياء تكون صحيحة عادةً.

○ If we go by bus, it is quicker.

○ When you go there in the afternoon, you can watch the sunset.

■ The clause with (if/when) can come at the start of the sentence, or at the end. When it comes first, we separate the two clauses with a comma.

■ يمكن أن نستخدم (If) أو (When) في بداية الجملة أو بين العبارتين، ولكن عندما نبدأ الجملة بـ (If) أو (When) نضع فاصلة (,) بين العبارتين.

○ If you press the button, the tablet switches off.

○ The tablet switches off if you press this button.

■ In questions, the clause with if/when usually comes at the end.

■ عند صياغة سؤال، عادةً ما نستخدم (If) أو (When) بين العبارتين.

○ How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?

○ Does your aunt always cook feteer when you visit her?

Prepositions of time

in	on	at
in the morning	on Friday (days)	at six o'clock (hours)
in the afternoon	on Saturday	at nine thirty
in the evening	on Sunday	at half past two
in October (months)	on school days	at eleven twenty
in September	on the weekend	at night
in summer (seasons)	on my birthday	at midnight
in winter	on April 17th (dates)	at midday
in 2019 (years)	on the 17th of April	at lunchtime

نستخدم حرف الجر (in) قبل الشهور، ولكن إن قصدنا يومًا محددًا في الشهر نستخدم حرف الجر (on).



Study for about 30 minutes, but no longer. If you try to study for hours without a break, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day even on Fridays and Saturdays. People's brains work better if they have a regular routine. Also, don't study when you are hungry! If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can work better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you write down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!

ذكر لمدة 30 دقيقة ليس أكثر. إذا حاولت الدراسة لساعات بدون استراحة، فلا يمكنك التركيز. عندما تأخذ فترات راحة منتظمة، فإنك تتذكر أكثر. من الأفضل أيضًا أن تذاكر في نفس الوقت كل يوم، حتى في أيام الجمعة والسبت. تعمل عقول الناس بشكل أفضل إذا كان لديهم روتين منتظم. أيضًا، لا تذاكر عندما تكون جائعًا! إذا قمت بتناول وجبة صحية في وقت الغداء يمكنك أن تعمل بشكل أفضل في وقت الظهيرة. من المفيد أن تقوم بكتابة قائمة عما تريد القيام به في كل مرة تذاكر فيها. ثم يمكنك حذفه من القائمة عند الانتهاء منه وتشعر بالفخر!



Listening Script



- Samer** : Dad, here's the information ❶ I found online ❷ about quad biking in the desert.
- Dad** : Oh, thanks Samer. Show me.
- Samer** : The company is called Desert Adventures ❸. When you look at their website, the information is here. Look. The tour guide will meet us at the hotel.
- Dad** : OK. What time will he meet us?
- Samer** : He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.
- Dad** : And what time do we get back?
- Samer** : We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is included in the price ❹. Should we take some water?
- Dad** : Yes. Good idea. How big is the group?
- Samer** : It'll be a group of six.
- Dad** : I like the photos. Everyone is wearing helmets ❺. That's good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike ❻. How long do we ride the quad bikes for?
- Samer** : One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?
- Dad** : Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Remember to listen to the guide's instructions ❼ so that you stay safe ❽.
- Samer** : Yes, I will Dad.
- Dad** : Good! How do we book the tour ❾ if we can't book it on the website?
- Samer** : We can book it at the office ❿ in town. If we book the tour today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount.
- Dad** : Great. Can you pass me my wallet? I need my credit card to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now.
- Samer** : Sure Dad. Here you are.

❶ معلومات

❷ عبر الإنترنت

❸ مغامرات محراوية (اسم شركة)

❹ السعر

❺ خوذات - خوذ

❻ دراجة رباعية

❼ إرشادات المرشد

❽ تبقى آمناً

❾ الحولة - الرحلة

❿ مكتب الشركة



Listening Script



Hana : Hi. My name's Hana. I get up every day at 6 o'clock. I have breakfast with my family at 6.30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday. I do homework on Tuesday.

Youssef : Hi. I'm Youssef. I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7.30 in the morning. I don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday. I do homework on Thursday.

Maggie : Hello. My name's Maggie. I get up every day at 6.30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports. I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.

Nader : Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8.15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

Exercises

Lesson

2

1

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

finish - have - concentrate - try - work

Study for about 30 minutes but no longer. If you ① to study for hours and hours, you can't concentrate. When you ② regular breaks, you ③ more. It's also better to study at the same time each day. People's brains ④ better if they have a regular routine.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

check - eat - finish - write - remember

Don't study when you're hungry! If you ① _____ a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can ② _____ better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you ③ _____ down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can ④ _____ it off the list when you ⑤ _____ studying and feel proud!

3 Read and complete the mini-dialogues with the words in the box:

pencils - door - dictionary - activities - social media

1. **Hazem** : Mom, there's a problem with the freezer. It isn't working.

Mom : The freezer doesn't work if you don't close the _____ properly.

2. **Leila** : Mrs. Manal, can we use _____ in the test?

Teacher: No, sorry, you can't. Tell me now if you don't have a blue pen.

3. **Karim** : What does this word mean, Sherif?

Sherif : I don't know. Look it up in a _____ if you don't know it.

4. **Selim** : What happens if you block a person on _____ ?

Dalia : You don't get any messages from them.

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Who - When - How) you study hard, you get good marks.

2. You feel thirsty (if - so - but) you don't drink water.

3. When you book online, you can (choose - chooses - chose) which

seats you want.

4. If you press the button, the tablet (switches - switch - switched) off.
5. If we go by bus, it (am - is - are) quicker.
6. How can we get to Giza if we (missing - misses - miss) the bus?
7. Does your aunt always (cooks - cooked - cook) feteer when you visit her?
8. If you (heat - heats - heated) sugar, it melts.
9. If you find my keys, please (called - call - calls) this number.
10. It means there's dust in the sky when the clouds (is - am - are) red.
11. My English always gets better when I (studied - study - studies) the lessons again at home.
12. You feel hungry (what - when - where) you don't eat.
13. She (could come - can come - came) with us if she has free time.
14. If you buy two T-shirts, you (get - gets - got) one free.
15. If you (doesn't water - don't water - water) plants, they die.
16. If you press this button, the red light (turns on - turn on - turned on).
17. If I (eats - eat - ate) too much cake, I get a stomach ache.
18. If the TV (work - don't work - doesn't work), don't use the remote control.
19. If he doesn't have enough money, he (can buy - couldn't buy - can't buy) that expensive bike.
20. My cat (tries - try - tried) to catch a bee when she sees it.

5 Choose the correct answer:

Preposition

1. We celebrate Sham El-Nessim (in - on - at) the spring.
2. Let's meet outside the school (in - on - at) 10:30 am.
3. We had a science class (in - on - at) Monday.
4. They went on a trip to the Red Sea (in - on - at) July.
5. Great news! I'm having a party (in - on - at) my birthday!
6. What did you do (in - on - of) the weekend?

7. When do you get up (in - on - at) school days?
8. I get up (in - on - at) 7 o'clock.
9. We walk back home from school (in - on - at) the afternoon.
10. They came to live here (in - on - at) 2021.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. but - Study - about - no longer - for - 30 minutes.

▶

2. the city - can - We - fun - have - in.

▶

3. My - tickets - books - the - online - dad.

▶

4. on this - product - had - discount - a great - We.

▶

5. do - How - you - study time - during - concentrate?

▶

?

6. the - city - we - Can - go to - bus - by?

▶

?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. mom there s a problem with the freezer

▶

2. mrs manal lets us use pencils in the test

▶

3. we had a math class on sunday

▶

4. he went on a trip to hurghada in october

▶

5. which city do you like to live in giza or alexandria

▶

Main Vocabulary

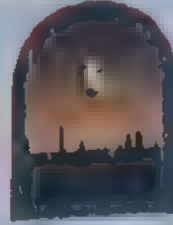
Part 1 Fatima faces her fear



famous places
أماكن شهيرة



monument
أثر تاريخي / معلم أثري



great view
منظر رائع / إطلالة رائعة



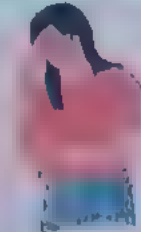
secret
سِرّ



climb (n)
تسلُّق



face (v)
يُواجه



disappoint
يُحبط



fear (n) (v)
رُؤوف / يخاف



teenage girl
فتاة في سن مرافقة



dome
قبة



hill
تَلّ

Part 2

The Story

Characters of the story

Little Deer

لغزال الصغير

Wolf

الذئب

Little Bird

الطائر الصغير

Bear

الدب

Fox

الثعلب



(forest

غابة



(river

نهر



(lake

بحيرة



(puddle

مياه



(stream

مجرى



(brave

شجاع



(proud

فخور

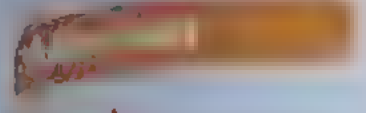


(sparkle

يتلألأ

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية



scared

مزعج : excited

محمس

calmer

أكثر هدوءا : clear

نقي

fantastic

رائع : cool

بارد

typical day

يوم اعتيادي : famous

مشهور

incredible

لا يُصدق : tall buildings

أبنية عالية

Prepositions

afraid of heights

خائف من الارتفاع

run on

يقفز (الركض)

look after

يرعى

climb up

يلتصق

look at

ينظر إلى

come back

يعود - يرجع

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
disappoint يُخيب - يُخيب أمل	disappointed	watch يشاهد	watched
fear يخاف	feared	help يساعد	helped
shout يصيح	shouted	stop يتوقف - يوقف	stopped
look after يعتني بـ	looked after	sparkle يتلألأ - يلمع	sparkled
climb يتسلق	climbed	face يواجه	faced
walk يمشي	walked	decide يقرر	decided
lift يرفع	lifted	breathe يتنفس	breathed
happen يحدث	happened	smile يبتسم	smiled

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
eat يأكل	ate	run يجري	ran
drink يشرب	drank	go يذهب	went
say يقول	said	sing يغني	sang
see يرى	saw	give يعطي	gave
come يأتي	came	hear يسمع	heard
catch يمسك	caught	find يجد	found
know يعرف	knew	feel يشعر	felt
make ي صنع	made	tell يخبر	told
think يفكر	thought	understand يفهم	understood

Alphabet



(w) = /w/

(v) = /v/

wolf
water
window
wet
whale
west
walk
web
worm
white
wear

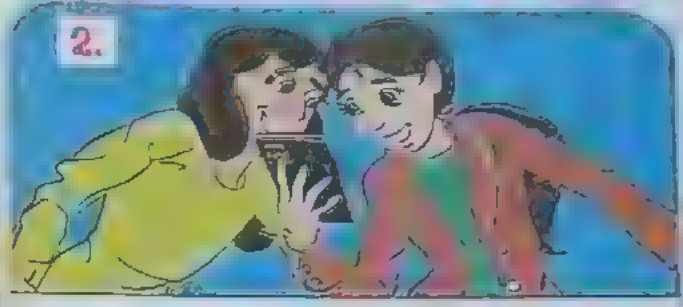
ذئب violin
ماء volcano
نافذة - شباك vegetables
مُبَلَّل - مُبَلَّل vet
حوت veil
اتجاه الغرب vest
يمشي van
شبكة العنكبوت visit (v)
دودة vase
أبيض very
يرتدي village

آلة كمان (آلة موسيقية)
بركان
خضراوات
طبيب بيطري
طرحة - وشاح - حجاب
سُترة - صديري
سيارة كبيرة - شاحنة
برور
مزهرية - فازة
جدا
قرية

Read and learn



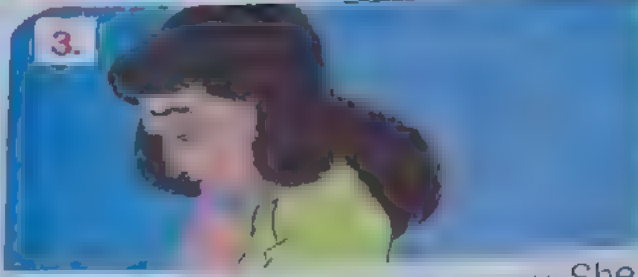
Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places.



Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up the hill to it -- there's a great view from there!"

تأتي أمل ابنة عم فاطمة المفضلة لزيارتها. إنها المرة الأولى التي تزور فيها أمل أسوان. إنها متحمسة جدًا، وتريد أن ترى كل الأماكن الشهيرة.

تُري أمل لفاطمة صورة. "هل يمكننا الذهاب لزيارة قبة أبو الهوا؟ يمكننا صعود التل للوصول إليها - هناك إطلالة رائعة من هناك!"



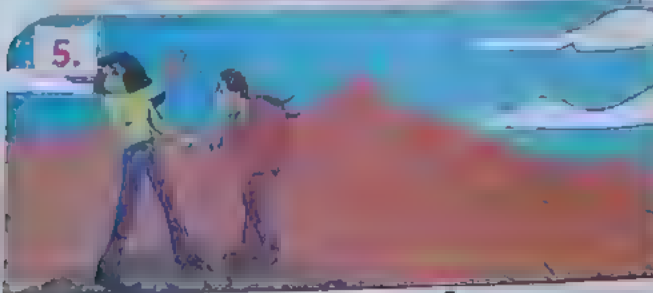
3. Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?

لا تعرف فاطمة ماذا تقول. إنها تريد أن تجعل أمل سعيد، لكن لديها سر: إنها خائفة من المرتفعات. كيف يمكنها صعود الدل إلى القبة؟



4. Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says, "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."

فاطمة لا تريد أن تخيب أمل ابنه عمها، لذلك، قررت مواجهة خوفها. تقول: "هذه فكرة جيدة. لنذهب يوم الثلاثاء بعد الظهر. يمكننا مشاهدة غروب الشمس."



5. It's Tuesday and the girls are at Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."

إنه يوم الثلاثاء، والفتيات عند قبة أبو الهوا. وبعد صعود طويل يصلون إلى القمة. وجه فاطمة شاحب. إنها خائفة جدًا. لكن أمل تمسك بيدها وتبتسم. ثم تقول: "تنفسي ببطء. يمكنك فعل هذا يا فاطمة. الآن انظري حولك."



6. Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared anymore. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!

تُشعر فاطمة أنها أكثر هدوءًا. وترفع رأسها تنظر إلى المنظر. إنه مذهل. فجأة لم تعد تشعر بالخوف. إنها تشعر بالفخر للعيش في مكان بهذه الروعة!

Pictures can help you understand what a story is about and give you extra detail. For example, the background can show you where the action happens, and the faces of the characters can tell you how they feel at that moment.

يمكنك الصور أن تساعدك على فهم ما تدور حوله القصة وتعطيك تفاصيل عن المكان وسبيل المثال، يمكن للبيئة أن توضح لك أين يقع الحدث وكيف يشعر الشخصيات في هذه اللحظة.

in the forest

Little Deer runs through the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake.



"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. Next, he comes to a river. The river is cool and clear. But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a small stream. The stream sparkles in the sun. "Finally!" he says. "I can have a... Oh no!" Little Deer sees Fox. "I can't drink from the same stream as Fox. Fox wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large puddle. It isn't blue like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle like the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!

Just then, Little Deer sees Little Bird. Little Bird sees Little Deer, too, but she isn't afraid. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle.

Little Deer watches Little Bird. "Hmm," he thinks. "If Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too!"

3
Little Deer goes back to the beautiful, blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and
 . But this time, **Little Deer** goes to the lake and has a drink. It is delicious.
Little Deer feels happy and proud.

يركض الغزال الصغير عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى بحيرة جميلة. وفي البحيرة، يرى
 الذئب، الدب، والفتية. لكن هذه المرة، يذهب الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة
 ويشرب من الماء. إنه لذيذ.

يركض الغزال الصغير "أوه لا لا أستطيع أن أشرب من نفس البحيرة التي يشرب منها
 الذئب، الدب، والفتية."

يركض الغزال الصغير، الركض عبر الغابة. وبعد ذلك يصل إلى بحيرة جميلة. وفي البحيرة، يرى
 الغزال الصغير الذئب، الدب، والفتية. يشرب من الماء.

يركض الغزال الصغير "أوه لا لا أستطيع أن أشرب من نفس البحيرة التي يشرب منها
 الذئب، الدب، والفتية."

يركض الغزال الصغير، الركض عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى بحيرة جميلة. وفي البحيرة، يرى
 الغزال الصغير الذئب، الدب، والفتية. يشرب من الماء.

يركض الغزال الصغير، الركض عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى بحيرة جميلة. وفي البحيرة، يرى
 الغزال الصغير الذئب، الدب، والفتية. يشرب من الماء.

يركض الغزال الصغير، الركض عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى بحيرة جميلة. وفي البحيرة، يرى
 الغزال الصغير الذئب، الدب، والفتية. يشرب من الماء.

يركض الغزال الصغير، الركض عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى بحيرة جميلة. وفي البحيرة، يرى
 الغزال الصغير الذئب، الدب، والفتية. يشرب من الماء.

يركض الغزال الصغير، الركض عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى بحيرة جميلة. وفي البحيرة، يرى
 الغزال الصغير الذئب، الدب، والفتية. يشرب من الماء.

يركض الغزال الصغير، الركض عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى بحيرة جميلة. وفي البحيرة، يرى
 الغزال الصغير الذئب، الدب، والفتية. يشرب من الماء.

يركض الغزال الصغير، الركض عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى بحيرة جميلة. وفي البحيرة، يرى
 الغزال الصغير الذئب، الدب، والفتية. يشرب من الماء.

يركض الغزال الصغير، الركض عبر الغابة. ويصل إلى بحيرة جميلة. وفي البحيرة، يرى
 الغزال الصغير الذئب، الدب، والفتية. يشرب من الماء.

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

A

B

1. Little Deer runs through
2. It is Amal's first time in Aswan.
3. Where did it have a drink?
4. She lifts her head
5. The water of the river

- a) At the lake.
- b) to look at the view.
- c) She's very excited.
- d) was cool and clear.
- e) the forest.
- f) feels happy and proud.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cousin - scared - famous - Dome - Aswan

Fatima's favorite ① Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in ② She's very excited. She wants to see all the ③ places. Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the ④ of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up to the top - there's a great view from there!"

3 Write the following words in the correct column:

water - wolf - volcano - window - violin -
vegetables - vet - west - veil - worm

/v/

/w/

4

Read the following text and answer the questions below:

It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you." Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. She can see all of the city below her. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared anymore. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!



Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word 'scared' means (brave - afraid - excited).
2. Fatima feels proud to live in such a (horrible - fantastic - boring) place!



Answer these questions:

3. What do the girls do at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?
4. Who helped Fatima to feel calmer? And how?

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. all the - want to - I - famous - see - places.
2. a - shows - Amal - photo - Fatima.
3. forest the - through - Deer - Little - runs.
4. from - There's - view - there - a - great!

5. doesn't - **He** - know - to - what - say.
▶
6. **She** - make - happy - everyone - to - wants.
▶
7. want - I - you - disappoint - don't - to.
▶
8. the - river - a drink - **Bear** - from - has.
▶

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. fatima's favorite cousin amal comes to visit her
▶
2. what s the weather like on sunday
▶
3. how much does it cost
▶
4. i don t like reading
▶
5. yes give me some water please
▶
6. he s a clever boy
▶
7. no she isn t good at painting
▶
8. it is amal's first time in aswan
▶

All the fun of the carnival

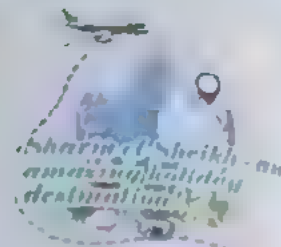
الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس Main Vocabulary



world of fantasy
عالم خيالي



fun
مسة - مرح



destination
الغاية - المكان المقصود



simulation theater
مسرح المحاكاة



shows
عروض



stores
مناجر

Dream Park Rides

Orient Train

rollercoaster لعبة قطار الشرق

معار الملاهي

Waterfalls

لعبة الشلالات

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

blog post	منشور في مدونة	tickets	تذاكر
date	تاريخ	seat	مقعد
title	عنوان	under the ocean	تحت المحيط
carnival	مدينة ملاهي	brave	نطاع
birthday surprise	مفاجأة عيد ميلاد	sound and light effects	تأثيرات صوتية وضوئية

children's section

high sections

a bit scary

big screens

أقسام الأطفال

أقسام عالية

مخيف بعض الشيء

اشاشات كبيرة

different places

snowy mountains

very realistic

suddenly

أماكن مختلفة

جبال ثلجية

واقعية جداً

فجأة



A blog post should have a title and date, and use informal language and first person pronouns (I, my, me). It has to include a personal story, and it usually gives the writer's opinions and feelings about their experiences. Bloggers often add photos to make their blogs more attractive.

يجب أن يكون لمنشور المدونة عنوان وتاريخ، وأن تستخدم ضمائر شخصية غير رسمية ومفاتيح المتكلم (I, my, me). يجب أن يتضمن قصة شخصية وعادة ما يتضمن آراء الكاتب ومشاعره حول تجربته. غالباً ما يضيف المدونون صوراً لجعل مدوناتهم أكثر جاذبية.

Nashwa's blog

All the fun of the Carnival!

Tuesday June 3rd

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy - it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores, too.

The children's section has nine rides including the Orient Train. We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. My brother loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the Waterfalls ride. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet!

In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater. You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world - snowy mountains even under the ocean. It's very realistic - I can't wait! What a great birthday present - thanks Mom and Dad!



نحن معكم مدينة الملاهي!

السلامة والبيئة

يا أمي، يا أبي، عيد ميلادي، ومن أين أنا؟ أنا مع عائلتي في دريم بارك في مدينة الجيزة. برأيي، هذا هو عيد ميلادي الخاص. أريد أن أشارككم بكل شيء عن المكان.

نريد أن نأخذك إلى المسرح، نجد نفسك مدأة في عالم خيالي. إنه أمر مثير للغاية. هناك الكثير مما يمكنك رؤيته والقيام به هنا. هناك ألعاب ركوب رائعة يمكنك تجربتها مثل قطار الملاهي (إذا كنت شجاعاً)، ومسارح حيث يمكنك مشاهدة العروض. وهناك أماكن لتناول الطعام ومتاجر أيضاً.

يحتوي مسرح الأطفال على تسع ألعاب ركوب، بما في ذلك "مطار اشرف". لدينا تذاكر لمدة الساعة 10 - بحسب أدي ركوب الألعاب المائية، لذلك فهو جيد ركوب بعض الألعاب في وقت لاحق من صباح اليوم. في الساعة الحادية عشر والنصف، لدينا تذاكر للعبة الشلالات. ويحتوي تلك اللعبة على بعض الأقسام العالية، لذا فهي مخيفة بعض الشيء. عند ركوبها تبذل للغاية!

ريد أنا وأبي، لذهاب إلى مسرح المحاكاة بعد الظهر. حيث تجلس في مقعدك وحولك مساند، كبيرة من كل اتجاه، وهناك تأثيرات صوتية وضوئية، وتشعر وكأنك في أماكن مختلفة حول العالم - الجبال الثلجية، وحتى تحت المحيط إنها واقعية للغاية - لا أطيع الانتظار! يا لها من هدية عيد ميلاد رائعة - شكراً يا أمي ويا أبي!



Sharm El-Sheikh - an amazing holiday destination!

For only LE 1000 per night, per person in a double room.

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do.

هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكنك فعلها في شرم الشيخ. إنها مدينة ممتعة ومزدحمة تقع على البحر الأحمر في مصر.



• swim in the sea

• السباحة في البحر

• relax at the beach

• الاسترخاء على الشاطئ.



• go quad biking in the desert

• الذهاب لركوب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء.



• visit St Catherine's monastery

• زيارة دير سانت كاترين

• eat good food

• تناول طعام جيد.

How to make a brochure

How to make a tourist brochure

- 1 Find some photos or pictures of the places you want to include in your brochure.
- 2 Write a description of each place under the photos.
- 3 Check that the spelling, grammar, and punctuation is correct.

كيفية عمل منشور سياحي

1. ابحث عن بعض الصور أو الرسومات لأماكن التي تريد أن تضعها في منشورك.
2. اكتب وصفاً لكل مكان تحت الصور.
3. تأكد من صحة الإملاء و لقواعد النحوية وعلامات الترقيم.

Exercises on Lesson 5

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

■ Manar is talking to Omnia on the phone.

fantasy - birthday - theater - present - rollercoaster

Manar : Hi, Omnia. Where are you now?

Omnia : Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special ① surprise at the Carnival.

Manar : Happy birthday! How is it?

Omnia : It's a world of ② - it's really exciting.

Manar : What about the rides there?

Omnia : There are amazing rides to try like the ③ (if you're brave!), the Orient Train, and the Waterfalls.

Manar : What a great birthday ④ !

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

effects - environment - screens - realistic - theater

I want to go to the simulation ① . When you go there, you sit in your seat with big ② all around you, and there are sound and light ③ , and it feels like you're in different places around the world - snowy mountains, even under the ocean. It's very ④ ! What a great experience!

3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Hi! I'm Tamer. Today is my birthday, and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it. When you arrive at the Carnival, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy - it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try, like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!), and theaters where you can watch shows. There are places to eat and stores too.

Choose the correct answer:

1. You can try the rollercoaster if you are (scared - sad - brave).
2. The underlined word 'exciting' means (interesting - boring - tiring).

Answer these questions:

3. Where is Tamer today? Who is with him?



4. Why are they at this place?



4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. at the Carnival - with - family - I'm - my.



2. are - shows - of - a lot - and concerts - There.



3. don't - like - rollercoasters - I.



4. Talia - with - Did - enjoy - you - your time?



?

5. waterfalls - We - for - have - the tickets

6. I - go to - want to - simulation - the - theater.

5. Punctuate the following sentences:

1. I love my special birthday surprise at the carnival

2. no you can t eat my burgers

3. is mohamed salah a good footballer

4. who s your favorite singer

5. i enjoy my time with my family a lot

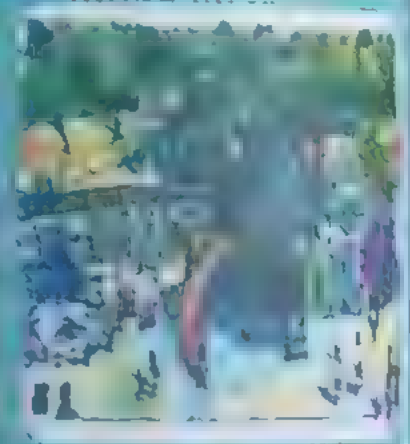
6. Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A day at the Carnival"

► Ideas to help you:

rollercoaster - Orient Train - simulation
theater - Waterfalls - enjoy - play

Blank area for writing the text.



Test (5) on Unit (3)

compilation of the test



1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. It's Amal's (second - first - third) time in Awwam.
2. Amal wants to (climb up - climb down - see) the hill to the dome of Abu Al-Hawa.
3. There is a great (scene - view - look) from there.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3Ms)

Dome - view - vacation - sunset

Amal : I'm really excited about our (1).

Fatima : Yes, me too! I love visiting new places. Where can we go?

Amal : Can we go visit the (2)

of Abu Al-Hawa?

Fatima : What can we do there?

Amal : We can climb up the hill to the dome - there's a great (3) from there!

Fatima : That's a good idea. Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. If she (go - goes - will go) by bus, it is quicker.
2. I sometimes go to bed (on - in - at) midnight.
3. Can he (help - helps - helping) you when you need help?
4. His birthday is (in - on - at) March 11th.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Mr. Ahmed is a teacher who works at a prep school in Giza. He teaches English. He is thirty years old. He lives in a house near school, so he walks to his work every day. Mr. Ahmed is married to Eman. They haven't got any children yet. Eman is a housewife, and she is four years younger than her husband. Ahmed likes reading and watching TV in his free time.

Eman prefers playing computer games in her free time. She also likes watching TV.



Choose the correct answer:

1. Eman is (30 - 26 - 24) years old.
2. Eman works at (school - home - hospital).



Answer these questions:

3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to? ►
4. What does Eman do in her free time? ►

5

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. is - She - of - heights - afraid. ►
2. has - lake - from - the - Wolf - a drink. ►
3. your - are - What - tips - for - studying? ►

6

Punctuate the following sentence:

- should tamer go quad biking on wednesday ►

7

Write an email to your friend Shaza:


Tell her how you organize your study to get ready for the midterm test, how you take breaks between study times, and the subjects you're good at and not good at. Your email address is menna@yahoo.com. And your friend's email address is shaza@hotmail.com.

From :

To :

Subject :

Test (6) on Unit (3)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:  (3Ms)

1. When you arrive at the (zoo - garden - Carnival - school), you are suddenly in a fantasy world.
2. You can try the (rollercoaster - Waterfalls - Raging River - Orient Train) if you are brave!
3. You can watch shows and concerts in the (cinemas - schools - restaurants - theaters).

2 Listen and complete the sentences:  (3Ms)

1. Today is my _____
2. I'm with my family at the _____
3. There are amazing rides to try like the _____ if you are brave.

3 Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. Where do you usually go (on - in - to - for) the weekend?
2. If you work for a long time without breaks, you (can - can't - will - wouldn't) concentrate.
3. When she (go - will go - can go - goes) to bed late, she's tired and lazy in the morning.
4. I often get lots of presents (at - in - on - of) my birthday.

4 Read and match "A" with "B": (5Ms)

1. I'm excited about our vacation.

2. We can climb up to the top,

3. Where will the guide meet us?

4. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting

5. Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret.

a) He will meet us at the hotel.

b) Okay, cool!

c) stops for a nice cool drink.

d) there's a great view from there!

e) Yes, me too!

f) city in Egypt by the Red Sea.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hi Mazen,
Here we are in Sharm El-Sheikh. We are having a great time. The hotel is the biggest in the city.
Our room is really nice, as it looks over the sea. There are lots of cafes and restaurants here. They have fantastic and delicious food, but it's so cheap. It was windy when we arrived on Sunday, but the weather is great today. We go to the beach every day. The people here are nice and friendly. I'm so happy.
Bye for now,
Fady

Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the underlined word 'biggest' is (shortest - tall; smallest - largest)
2. The food in restaurants is (cheap - very cheap - not expensive - expensive)

Answer these questions:

3. Who wrote this email?
4. How are the restaurants in Sharm El-Sheikh?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. do - school days - you - When - on - get up?
2. go to - and - ride on - Let's - the theme park - a rollercoaster!
3. doesn't - she - Suddenly - feel - any more - scared.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

fatima's favorite cousin amal comes to visit her in aswan

8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A visit to Cairo Tower"

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| ▶ When did you go? | ▶ Who did you go with? |
| ▶ What did you eat? | ▶ What did you do there? |
| | ▶ What did you see at the top? |

HAPPY

Unit 4

Celebrate Good Times!

أفعل بالوقت الجيد!

In this unit you will:

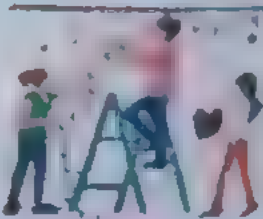
- listen, read, and write about celebrations.
- talk about things that are happening at or around the moment of speaking using the present continuous.
- understand the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
- learn to estimate volumes.
- understand the difference between the sounds /eɪ/ and /e/.
- write a formal invitation.
- research and make a poster about a celebration.



Lesson 1

Can you blow up some balloons?

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



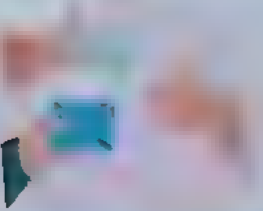
hang up the streamers
تعلق أشرطة الأضواء



blow up balloons
ينفخ البالونات



decorate the birthday cake
تزين عيد الميلاد



send the invitations
يرسل الدعوات



make a playlist
يقوم بإعداد قائمة تشغيل (أغاني)



let off the fireworks
يطلق ألعاب النارية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

birthday party

حفلة عيد ميلاد

scissors

invitation

دعوات بالبريد الإلكتروني

string

event

حدث - مناسبة

in the yard

في الفناء

candle

شمعة

get dark

تصبح مظلم

Pass me

ناولني ...

adult

شخص بالغ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

discuss

يناقش

discussed

ask

يسأل - يطلب

asked

listen

يسمع

listened

talk

يتكلم

talked

present

help
pass
need

past

helped
passed
needed

present

love
decorate
lie

Lesson

loved
decorated
lied

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

blow up
hang up
let off
cut
read
choose
come

Past

blew up
hung up
let off
cut
read
chose
came

Present

get dark
find
make
write
know
mean
send

Past

got dark
found
made
wrote
knew
meant
sent

The lesson notes

I'm tying the streamers together.

- أنا أربط أشرطة الزينة الملونة مع بعضها.
- كلمة "tying" هي في الأصل كلمة "tie".
- لاحظ أن: عند إضافة "ing" لفعل ينتهي بـ "ie"، تحول الـ "ie" إلى "y".

die ► ► dying	lie ► ► lying	tie ► ► tying
---------------	---------------	---------------

RSVP

■ "RSVP" is an initialism of the French phrase, "répondez s'il vous plaît." This directly translates to "Respond, if you please." The initialism is often used to confirm attendance for an event, such as a wedding or birthday party.

■ "RSVP" هي الحروف الأولى من العبارة الفرنسية "répondez s'il vous plaît." وترجمتها هي "رَدّ إذا سمحت". غالبًا ما تُستخدم هذه الأحرف الأولى لتأكيد الحضور لحدي ما، مثل حفل زفاف أو حفلة عيد ميلاد.

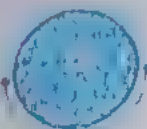
Do you know?

In China, people eat noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to represent a long life for the person.

في الصين، يأكل الناس النودلز (مكرونة ممتدة) في أعياد ميلادهم. النودلز تكون طويلة جدًا لتمثل حياة طويلة للشخص.



Read and learn



- Hani** : Hi Youssef, what are you doing?
- Youssef** : Hi, Hani. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister Nesma's party. Can you help me?
- Hani** : Sure. What can I do, cousin?
- Youssef** : Will you pass me the scissors, please? I'm tying the streamers together and I need to cut the string. Can you also blow up some balloons? We need to hang those up too.
- Hani** : Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?
- Youssef** : Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the birthday cake. They have candles for it, too. Oh, there's Amina. Amina! Are you sending the invitations?
- Amina** : Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone email invitations.
- Youssef** : Good idea. How many people are coming?

- Amina** : I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP" on the invitations. That means everyone has to let me know if they're coming.
- Hani** : Who's choosing the music?
- Amina** : Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.
- Hani** : That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to make it after she finishes the cake.
- Amina** : And we need to find an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark.
- Youssef** : Yes, Nesma loves them. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

هاني : مرحبًا يا يوسف، ماذا تفعل؟

يوسف : مرحبًا يا هاني. أنا أغلق الأشرطة الملونة من أجل حفلة أختي نسمة. هل بإمكانك مساعدتي؟

هاني : بالتأكيد. ماذا يمكنني أن أفعل يا ابن عمي؟

يوسف : هلاً تناولني المفص من فضلك؟ أنا أربط الأشرطة الملونة ببعضها وأحتاج أن أقطع الخيط. هل يمكنك نَفْحُ بعض البالونات أيضًا؟ فنحن بحاجة إلى تعليقها كذلك.

هاني : بالطبع! ماذا تفعل شقيقة تيك الأخرى؟ هل تساعدان؟

يوسف : داليدا ونهي؟ نعم إنهما يساعدان. إنهما يَزَيِّنُ كعكة عيد الميلاد. ولديهم شموع من أجل ذلك أبضاً. أوه، ها هي أمينة! هل ترسلين الدعوات؟

أمينة : مرحبًا يا يوسف. نعم، أنا أفعل ذلك. لكنني أرسل دعوات بالبريد الإلكتروني للجميع.

فكره حله كم عدد الذين سيمضون؟

امينة : لست متأكدة بعد، لكنني كنتُ أنسى من مضك" على الدعوات. وهذا يعني أنه يجب على الجميع إحضار ما إذا كانوا قادمين.

هاني : من سيختار الموسيقى؟

سنعدُ داليدا هانم تشعل على هانمها. لقد أعدت قائمة تشغيل لحفلاتي وكانت جميلة للغاية.

هاني : هذا صحيح. لقد كانت جيدة جدًا. يمكننا أن نطلب منها إعداد قائمة تشغيل بعد أن نسمي من إعداد الكعكة.

امينة : ونحن بحاجة إلى إيجاد شخص بالغ لإطلاق الألعاب النارية في الفناء عندما يخل الظلام.

سوف: نعم، نسمي تحبها. أعرف شخصًا، سأطلب من والدي فعل ذلك.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

A	B
1. Who is the birthday party for?	a) the birthday cake.
2. Let's hang up	b) up some balloons.
3. You can blow	c) in the yard.
4. I'm sending everyone	d) It's for Nesma.
5. Dalida is decorating	e) email invitations.
	f) the streamers.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1. We need an adult to let off the (streamers - fireworks - balloons).
2. Mahmoud has a very nice (playlist - invitation - cake) on his mobile can play it at the party.
3. Can you (let off - know - send) them email invitations?
4. Give me the scissors to cut the (string - birthday cake - candles).

5. My mom loves (decorating - hanging - blowing up) birthday cakes
6. I'm (hanging - blowing - sending) up the streamers for Nesma's party
7. Can you (decorate - let off - blow up) some balloons?
8. We can ask Tamer to (hang - make - blow up) some balloons.

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box.

balloons - hanging - birthday - happy - string

- Hany : Hi Youssef, what are you doing?
- Youssef : Hi, Hany I'm
Nesma's party. Can you help me?
- Hany : Sure. What can I do, cousin?
- Youssef : Will you pass me the scissors, please? I'm tying the streamers
together and I need to cut the
also blow up some . Can you
up too. ? We need to hang those
- Hany : Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?
- Youssef : Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are. They're decorating the
cake. They have candles for it too.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. Will - come to - you - party - my - birthday?



?

2. chocolate - don't - I - like - cakes - the.



.

3. the - My - all - decorates - cakes - mom.



4. My - is - brother - the - balloons - blowing up.



.

5. fireworks - Did - the - you - off - let?



?

6. some - play - Let's - music - nice.



.....

7. you - Are - the - sending - invitations?



?

Connect 6

Unit 4
8. a playlist - made - my - for - party - Dalida.

9. an adult - We - need - off - to let - the fireworks.

10. all - love - I - friends - my.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what are nesma's sisters doing

2. they don't like carnivals

3. let's go to sharm el-sheikh on monday

4. do you enjoy your vacation

5. no i can't do this right now

6. daida and noha are decorating the birthday cake

6 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Radwa:

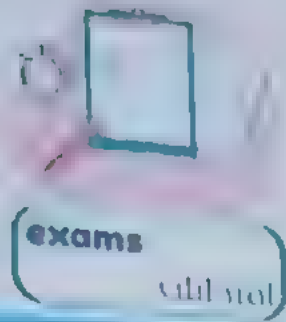
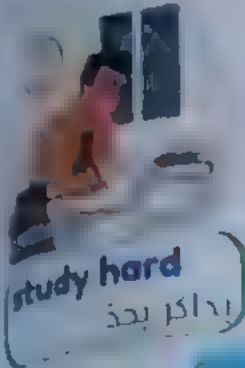
Invite her to your birthday party, and tell her about the arrangements party. Your email address is mona@gmail.com, and your friend's address is radwa@yahoo.com.

From :

To :

Subject :

Main Vocabulary



Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Expressions and Phrases

get outside	يذهب إلى الخارج	how our revision is going	كمية سير المراجعة
do some exercise	يقوم ببعض التمارين	is taking ages	يستغرق وقتاً طويلاً جداً
a few times a week	بضع مرات أسبوعياً	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
slow reader	قارئ بطيء	indoors	داخل البيت

Conjugation exercises

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Future	Past
relax - يسترخي - يستريح	relaxed	cycle - يركب دراجة	cycled
borrow - يستعير	borrowed	practice - يتدرب	practiced
talk - يتكلم	talked	bake - يحضر	baked
enjoy - يستمتع	enjoyed	live - يعيش	lived
finish - ينتهي	finished	study - يذاكر - يذاكر	studied
play - يلعب	played	try - يحاول	tried

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منبظمة

have fun
feed
know
run
take
write

استمتع
أطعم
أعرف
أجري
أأخذ
أكتب

had fun
fed
knew
ran
took
wrote

spend (time)
go
get me
say
tell
wear

أنفقي (وقت)
أذهب
أستأجر
أقول
أخبر
أرتدي

went
got me
said
told
wore

Read and learn

From : ali@qwikmail.com
To : eyad@egyptmail.com
Subject : What's your news?

Hi Eyad,

How are things?

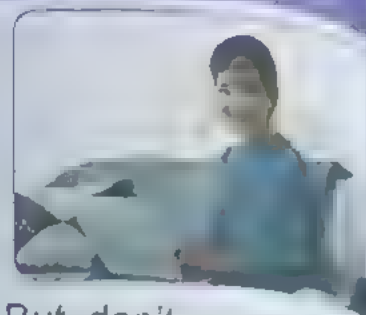
I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week too – it's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision is going! My friend Asser is organizing a party at his house at the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that.

What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already! 😊

In your last email, you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing *Everything in Ancient Egypt* but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader. I am enjoying it – I love history books – and the documentary is good, too (my mom said she will get me the DVD). What about you? What are you reading?

Write soon and tell me your news,

Ali



GRAMMAR TUTOR

2

The Present Continuous Tense الزمن الحاضر المستمر

Affirmation		
I	Am	reading.
He	Is	reading.
She	Is	reading.
It	Is	reading.
You	Are	reading.
We	Are	reading.
They	Are	reading.

(am - is - are) + (v) فعل + ing يتكون من

Nesma is wearing a red T-shirt.

We use it to talk about actions that are happening at the moment of speaking.

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن ومستمر أثناء الكلام.

- Two boys are playing football now.
- We're helping to make the birthday cake at the moment.

We also use it to talk about actions in progress around now.

يستخدم أيضًا للتعبير عن نشاط يتم في الفترة الحالية وليس بالضرورة أنه يقع لحظة الكلام.

- I'm studying for my exams this week.
- My dad is building a new house these days.
- We are practicing for the football game. It's on Sunday.
- They are building new cities in the desert this year.

■ We also use it to describe things that are happening in a picture.
 ■ نستخدم أيضًا لوصف الأشياء التي تحدث في صورة.

○ What are Noha and Dalida **doing** there in the picture?

► They're **play ng** football with the balloons.

■ We sometimes use some words with the present continuous tense.

■ أحيانًا ما نستخدم بعض الكلمات مع زمن المضارع المستمر.

now	الآن	today	اليوم
at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	this (week)	هذا (الأسبوع)
Look	انظر	Listen	استمع - اسمع - أنصت

○ She's talking on the phone **at the moment**.

○ I'm reading an English book **now**.

○ **Look!** A dog is playing with a cat.

○ **Listen!** Birds are singing.

○ She's doing lots of housework **today**.

■ When verbs end in a single (e), omit it before adding (ing).

■ عند إضافة (ing) إلى فعل منتهٍ بـ (e)، يُحذف حرف الـ (e) قبل إضافة (ing).

have ► having	write ► writing	come ► coming
make ► making	ride ► riding	drive ► driving
wave ► waving	wake ► waking	shine ► shining

■ When verbs end in a consonant after a vowel, double the last consonant before adding (ing).

■ لأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف واحد متحرك قوى في النطق، نضاعف الحرف الأخير الساكن قبل إضافة الـ (ing).

run ► running	dig ► digging	swim ► swimming
put ► putting	stop ► stopping	cut ► cutting

In the negative form, we add (not) after (am - is - are).

- They **aren't** enjoying their vacation.
- She **isn't** doing her homework at the moment.

In the interrogative form, we use (am - is - are) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the (v. + ing).

عند عمل سؤال على المضارع المستمر، نبدأ السؤال بـ (am - is - are) أو نضع إحداهما بعد أداة الاستفهام مع (الفعل + ing).

- Are you reading now?
 - Is he riding his bike?
 - What **are** you doing, girls?
 - What's Ali doing?
- ▶ No, I am not.
 - ▶ Yes, he is.
 - ▶ We're helping to make the birthday cake.
 - ▶ He's painting a picture.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I'm studying hard | a) do some exercise, too. |
| 2. It's important to get outside and | b) a party at his house. |
| 3. What are you doing? | c) Yes, he is. |
| 4. My friend Asser is organizing | d) No, she isn't. |
| 5. Is she at the party? | e) I'm reading a book. |
| | f) for my exams. |

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The students (are - am - is) practicing hard for a music concert next month.

2. Nesma (am not - is - is not) wearing a red T-shirt. She's wearing a blue one.
3. The girls (am not - is - are not) dancing.
4. (He - They - I) are playing football.
5. Tamer (are - am - is) wearing a party hat.
6. She (are - am - is) reading a book in an armchair.
7. We (aren't - isn't - is) enjoying our vacation.
8. She's (studying - study - studies) for her exams this week.
9. (Am - Is - Are) you playing football this year?

► Yes, (I am - I'm not - they are).

10. What are you (does - do - doing), girls?
11. We're (help - helps - helping) to make the birthday cake.
12. My dad (are working - work - is working) in France for three months.
We miss him!
13. Where (are - am - is) your brother studying in the USA?
14. Prices (الأسعار) are (goes up - going up - go up) a lot this year.
15. Where (are - am - is) Basel and Amir playing their football game today?
16. I'm (practicing - practice - practices) for the football game.
17. I (am not - am - is) playing basketball this week; I have too much school work.
18. What (are not - are - is) you doing this week, Malak?
19. Two boys (play - plays - are playing) volleyball at the moment.
20. What (are - am - is) Noha and Dalida doing there?
21. The boys (eat - are eating - eats) pizza now.
22. Hany and Youssef are (try - trying - tries) to climb the tree.
23. We (have fun - has fun - are having fun) at the beach these days.
24. (Are - Am - Is) he wearing a blue T-shirt?
25. Look! Three girls (cycle - are cycling - cycles) to the park.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. We - the decorations - buying - today - are.

2 playing - Are - a - they - game?

3 wearing - a - hat - I'm - new

4 some - Ahmed - is - cakes - eating.

5 sisters - My - cooking - food - some - are

6 your - taking - dad - is - photos?

7 helping - Laila and Mona - their - are - mom.

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1 muhammad isn t playing basketball

2 he s wearing a wonderful suit

3 we aren t enjoying our vacation

4 no i am not happy

5 salaa eating her sandwich

5 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"What are you and your family doing these days?"

ideas to help you:

read - work - cook - do - wash - watch - play



Lesson 3

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



celebrate

يحتفل



celebrations

احتفالات



adults

شخص بالغ

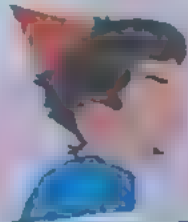


blow out



presents

هدايا



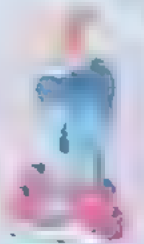
one breath

نفس واحد



guests

ضيوف



are left to burn

تبقى

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

card

card (n) - بطاقة

cake

كعكة

party food

food - طعام

fire

traditions

تقاليد

usual

معتاد

especially

خاصة

Prepositions

on birthdays

at this age

on the day they are born

come out of

Egypt	مصر	South Africa	جنوب أفريقيا
USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	Holland	هولند
Britain	بريطانيا	India	الهند
China	الصين	Brazil	البرازيل

Useful expressions

adults	: fully grown people, not children
blow out	: to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame
breath	: the air that comes out of your mouth
noodles	: a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs
guests	: people you invite to your home

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Future	Past	
guess	يُخَمِّن	guessed	invite يدعو (يعرّم)	invited
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	produce يُنتِج	produced
include	يشمل	included	measure يقس	measured

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
give	يُعْطِي	gave		become	يُصْبِح	became
make	يُصْنَع	made		get	يَحْمِلُ عَلَى	got
leave	يَتْرَك	left		sing	يُغَنِّي	sang
show	يُظْهِر - يَبَيِّن	showed		read	يَقْرَأ	read

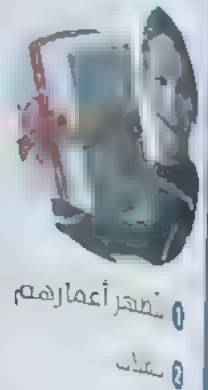
To match headings to paragraphs in a text, look for key words first. What is the topic of the key words in each paragraph? Then look at the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics?

مطابقة العناوين بالفقرات في نص ما، ابحث عن الكلمات الرئيسية في كل فقرة. ما هي الموضوعات في كل فقرة؟ ثم انظر إلى العناوين. هل هناك كلمات متشابهة أو متعلقة بمواضيع؟

Read and learn

1. Our birthday celebrations:

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to **show their** age ❶. We often have **parties** ❷ with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.



2. Birthdays are not just for children:

What about in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is **usual** ❸ to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays **even** ❹ when they are adults. People often give other people birthday cards too, **especially** ❺ on important birthdays. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, and 15.



1 Candles and cakes:

Children everywhere like party food. They like to eat cakes, sandwiches, and drink juice. Children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this and make one **wish**. But in some countries the candles **are left to burn**. For example, when it is a child's birthday in Pakistan, the family make a big cake. The family and the friends of their birthday child come to the house to eat the cake in their family? That's their mom and dad! In India, the birthday child gives cake to all the **guests** at the party first, before they have some themselves.



4 A longer life:

Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long **noodles** or **peaches** on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a **long life**. And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!

عاشا طويلا
عاشا طويلا
عاشا طويلا

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

parties - cakes - celebrated - present - candles

Birthdays are ① all over the world. What do we do in Egypt?
We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put ②
on them to show their age. We often have ③ with a lot of
family and friends. The children usually get a ④ too.

2

Read and match "A" with "B":

A

B

1. blow out

2. guests

3. adults

4. noodles

5. breath

a) to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame

b) fully grown people, not children

c) people you invite to your home

d) the air that comes out of your mouth

e) a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs

3

Write the following words in the correct column:

cake - bed - head - shed - train - say - bread - pay - wait - pen

/e/

/ei/

4

Choose the correct answer:

1. Is this the (main - men) paragraph in the text?
2. I think the tools are in the (shed - shade).
3. I want to (sail - sell) a boat!
4. I (met - mate) my friend Gameela at elementary school.
5. Hany has a (pain - pen) in his foot.

6 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family: their mom and dad!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. In many countries, children like to (blow up - blow out - hang up) the candles on their birthday cakes.
2. In India, the (presents - cakes - candles) are left to burn.

B Answer these questions:

3. What do children like everywhere?
▶
4. What do they do in Brazil when it is a child's birthday?
▶

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. birthday - often - People - give - cards - other people.
▶
2. we - usually - do - birthday parties - Who - invite to?
▶?
3. food - Children - everywhere - party - like.
▶
4. interesting - the most - Which - is - tradition - birthday?
▶?
5. countries - food - Some - birthday - different - have.
▶
6. birthdays - in your family - celebrate - you - How - do?
▶?
7. like - blow - Children - to - the candles - out.
▶

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what do we do in egypt
▶
2. in the usa and britain, it is usual to give presents on birthdays
▶
3. who gets the first piece of birthday cake in india
▶
4. how old are chinese children when they are born
▶

8 Write an email of (50) words to your British friend Jane:

Tell her about the traditions of celebrating birthdays in your country, Egypt. Your email address is nada@school.net. And your friend's email address is jane@hotmail.com.

From :
To :
Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 45

Writing & Project

Main Vocabulary

Writing



Mother's Day celebration
احتفال عيد الأم



local community
مجتمع محلي



attend

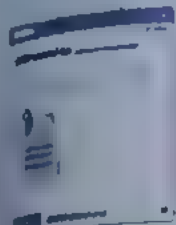


Confirm

confirm

يحضر

يؤكد



is addressed to
موجهه إلى



receive

يستلم - يتلقى



reply (n)

رد - إجابة



special day

يوم مميز

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Part II Project

Book Day Party

حفل يوم الكتاب

figure out

يعرف - يكتشف

dress up يرتدي ملابس أنيقة - يرتدي ملابس تنكرية

costume

زينة

character

شخصية

amazing prize

جائزة مذهلة

Synonyms مرادفات

attend

: come to

confirm

: say yes or no

celebration

: party

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

help	ساعد	helped
attend	حضر - حضر	attended
confirm	تأكد	confirmed
organize	نظم	organized

receive	استلم / تلوا / تلوا	received
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
invite	دعو (شخص لشئ)	invited
reply	رد	replied

Read and learn

From : celebrationgroup@nhandouschool.com
To : Mr Ahmed Hegazy
Subject : Mother's Day Celebration

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day **celebration** this year. We are organizing a **special day** for the event on Sunday March 21 (**details below**). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the **local community** who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Date: Sunday March 21

Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm

Location: School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above

Please reply by February 20 to **confirm** if you can **attend** the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal



- ١ عيد الأم
- ٢ احتفال
- ٣ يوم خاص
- ٤ تفاصيل
- ٥ مجتمع محلي
- ٦ سبب
- ٧ شكر
- ٨ تأكيد

We use formal language when we speak or write to people we don't know very well. We use polite language and correct spelling and grammar in formal writing.

نستخدم لغة رسمية عندما نتحدث مع أشخاص لا نعرفهم جيداً أو نكتب لهم رسالة رسمية ونستخدم لغة مهذبة وإملاء ومواعيد عوية نتحدث فيها اللغة الإنجليزية

Exercises

on

Lessons

4

5

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

A

B

1. annual
2. attend
3. celebration
4. confirm

- a) say yes or no
- b) party
- c) come to
- d) every year

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. invite - Mother's Day - celebration - I - to my school's - you.



2. are - a - day - special - organizing - We.



3. inviting - from - community - local - people - We are.



4. your friends - with - Did - enjoy - you - your time?



5. We - party - for - have - the - tickets.



6. I - go to - to - want - zoo - the.



3

Read the following text and answer the questions below:

From : celebrationgroup@binhaddouschool.com
To : Mr Ahmed Hegazy
Subject : Mother's Day Celebration

Dear Mr Ahmed,

I am writing to invite you to our school's Mother's Day celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below). As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Date: Sunday March 21

Time: 4:00 pm - 7:00 pm

Location: School Hall

RSVP in writing to the email address above

Please reply by February 20 + confirm if you can attend the celebration.

Yours sincerely,

Randa Gamal



Choose the correct answer:

1. I am writing to (- -) you to our school's Mother's Day celebration.
2. The event is on (- -) March 21.



Answer these questions:

3. Who is the invitation addressed to?
 ▶
4. When does Randa ask to receive Mr Ahmed's reply?
 ▶

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. we very much hope you can attend

2. no you can t share these documents with anyone

3. marcel koller is a successful coach

4. who s your favorite actor

5. i enjoy my time with my friends a lot

5 Write a formal invitation of 50 words:

You are having a celebration in your school or community. Use Randa's email to help you. Remember to include a subject heading, the name of the person you are inviting, and information about:

ideas to help you:

▶ what the celebration is for

▶ where it is

▶ when it is (time and date)

▶ when the person has to reply

Test 7 on Unit 4

خاص بالأزهر الشريف



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

اسم الاسماء موبود آخر الكتاب.

1. In Egypt, we usually make birthday (food - fruit - cakes).
2. The children usually get a/an (age - present - candle)
3. We often have parties with a lot of (family - boys - girls) and friends

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

party - playlist - fireworks - invitations

Youssef : Hi Amina. What are you doing?

Amina : Hi Youssef. I'm sending everyone email

Youssef : Good idea.

Hany : Who's choosing the music for the party?

Amina : We can ask Dalida to make a playlist. And we need to find someone for the fireworks.

Youssef : Yes, Nesma loves them. We need an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. She is (wears - wore - wearing) a white dress
2. (Do - Am - Is - Are) you washing the glasses?
3. They are blowing up some (streamers - balloons - invitations) for the party
4. We (play - played - are playing) football at the moment.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

My name is Ahmed. In the summer, I have a lot of free time to enjoy in Alexandria. In the afternoon, I love going to the beach and feeling the cool water on my skin. Swimming is so much fun, and I can spend hours splashing around (يرس الماء) with my friends. We build sandcastles and play beach volleyball, too. In the evening, I like to explore the city. I often go to parks, stores, restaurants or cafes.

Choose the correct answer:

- Ahmed enjoys his free time in (Hurghada - Alexandria - Matrouh).
- Ahmed loves feeling the (hot - warm - cool) water on his skin.

Answer these questions:

- What does Ahmed do on the beach?
- What does Ahmed do in the evening?



5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

- drinking - We're - juice - orange - the beach - on.
- Birthday - are - the same - not - everywhere - celebrations.
- have - you - the - Do - term - exams?



6 Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

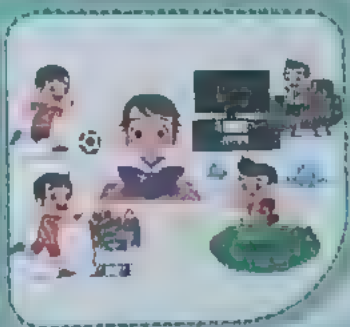
- i helped nada decorate the birthday cake

7 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"How do you spend your free time?"

Ideas to help you:

read - play football - go shopping - park - watch TV



Test 8 on Unit 11

نما الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

1. Children like to (blow out - burn - breathe - eat) the candles on their birthday cakes.
2. In (Nigeria - Brazil - China - India), the candles are left to burn.
3. It is good to blow out the candles with one ()

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

1. I'm studying hard for ...!
2. I'm going running every morning in the
3. Aser is organizing a at his house.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. They (are enjoying - enjoy - doesn't enjoy - are enjoying) their vacation. The hotel they are staying in is very noisy.
2. I am not (organize - organizes - organizing -) my sister's party.
3. Where is she (goes - go - going - went)?
4. Is Khaled (writing - write - writes - wrote) the invitation?

4 Read and match "A" with "B":

(5Ms)

A	B
1. We need an adult to	a) people give you presents.
2. When it's your birthday,	b) making the cake.
3. Do you often go to birthday parties?	c) let off the fireworks.
4. Mariam is not	d) our school's Mother's Day celebration.
5. I am writing to invite you to	e) Yes, I do my homework well.
	f) No, I don't.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

It's July 7th. Today, Sally is seventeen years old. She's wearing a pretty new dress. It's blue and white. Sally is having a party today and she's expecting all her friends to come. They are going to arrive at Sally's house soon.

Choose the correct answer:

Next year, Sally will be ()
her birthday.

2. Sam has a birthday party every () years old.

3. What does the underlined word "They" refer to?

What has Sally's mother prepared?

you - many years - hope - We - for - live.

- on - am - a new - working - project.

the event - are - on Friday - organizing - for

100 people in egypt play games at birthday parties

Write her to your school's annual celebration this year. Tell her all the necessary details: date, time, location ...etc. Your email address is

And your friend's email address is Jasmine@gmail.com.

Unit 5


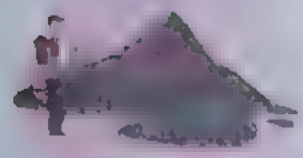






Amazing Journeys

رحلات مذهلة

In this unit I will

- listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the past
- talk about things that happened in the past using common irregular verbs.
- understand the difference between the sounds /d/ and /g/
- understand specific details in a text.
- write a diary entry to express feelings and mood.
- research and make a poster about a famous traveler.

Main Vocabulary

			
trip رحلة قصيرة	journey رحلة طويلة	voyage رحلة بحرية	travel diary يوميات السفر
			
famous explorers مستكشفون مشهورون	traveler مسافر - رحالة	adventure مغامرة	experiences تجارب

go on a trip	يذهب في رحلة قصيرة	get to	يصل إلى
go on a journey	يذهب في رحلة طويلة	arrive in	يصل إلى
go on a voyage	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	far away	بعيدًا
ride on a camel	يركب جملًا	on vacation	في عطلة - في إجازة
sail by ship	يبحر بالسفينة	by sea	بحرًا - عبر البحر
travel by train	يسافر بالقطار	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
cross the desert	عبر الصحراء	on an island	على جزيرة
in the 13 th century	في القرن الثالث عشر	come to life	يحيى للحياة

Extra Vocabulary

مکان‌های مهم

Croatia

چین

Marco Polo museum

موزه مارکو پولو

Korcula Island

جزیره کورکولا

Hormuz

مضيق هرمز

China

Venice

Iran

Hurghada

Conjugation of verbs

Present		Past		Present		Past
work	يعمل	worked		call	نَسَقِب	called
discuss	يُتَافَش	discussed		travel	يسافر	traveled
listen	يستمع	listened		sail	يُنَجِر	sailed
want	يريد	wanted		stop	يَتَوَقَّف - يَوْقِف	stopped
remember	يتذكر	remembered		imagine	يَتَخَيَّل - يَتَوَصَّر	imagined
visit	يزور	visited		arrive	يَبْل	arrived

Present		Past		Present		Past
go	يذهب	went		think	يُفَكِّر	thought
do	يفعل	did		take	يَأْخُذ	took
know	يعرف	knew		write	يَكْتُب	wrote
read	يقرأ	read		get to	يصل إلى	got to
fly	يطير	flew		can	يستطيع	could
ride	يركب	rode		come	يَأْتِي	came

Did you know?

The longest journey on foot was George Meegan's walk from Tierra Del Fuego in Argentina to Alaska. It was 30,608 km long, and he completed it in 2,425 days between 1977 and 1983.

كانت أطول رحلة على الأقدام هي رحلة شير جورج ميجان من نيبيرا ديل فويغو في الأرجنتين إلى ألاسكا. كان طول الرحلة 30,608 كم، وأكملها في 2,425 يومًا بين عامي 1977 و1983.



Read and learn



Rana: What are you reading, Injy?

Injy: Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember my family's vacation in Croatia a few years ago.

Rana: That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

Injy: I think it was visiting the Marco Polo Museum.

Rana: Really? Where is that?

Injy: It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula. We took a trip there. It's a really interesting museum - all about the travels of Marco Polo.

Rana: Who was Marco Polo?

Injy: He was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo*.

Rana: How did people get to China in those days? It's very far away. You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!

Injy : It was very difficult - the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

Rana : Wow, what an adventure!

Injy : Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 800 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

ماذا تمرئين يا إنجي؟

أهلاً يا رنا، إنها يوميات السفر الخاصة بي. أريد أن أتذكر غطله عائلي في كرونا قبل بضع سنوات.

هذه فكرة جيدة. ماذا كان الشيء المفضل بالنسبة لك في العطلة؟

أعتقد أنها كانت زيارة متحف ماركو بولو.

حقاً؟ أين يتواجد؟

إنه على جزيرة في كرواتيا تسمى كوركولا. لقد ممنا برحلة إلى هناك. إنه متحف مثير للاهتمام حقاً - يحتوي على كل ما يتعلق بأسفار ماركو بولو.

من كان ماركو بولو؟

كان مسكشفاً إيطالياً ومن أوائل الأشخاص الذين زاروا الصين من الغرب. لقد ذهب إلى هناك في القرن الثالث عشر وكتب يوميات عن تحاربه. وتسمى هذه اليوميات "أسفار ماركو بولو".

كيف كان الناس يذهبون إلى الصين في تلك الأيام؟ إنها بعيدة جداً. ولم يكن يمكنك حينها الذهاب إلى هناك بالطائرة أو السمر بالقطار!

إنجي: كان الأمر صعباً للغاية - لقد استغرقت الرحلة سنوات! ذهب ماركو بولو في رحلة بحرية طويلة. أبحر بالسفينة من السدقية (فينيسيا) إلى كوركولا، ومنها إلى إيران. عندما وصل إلى مصب هرمز، توقف وشق طريقه عبر الصحراء، وركب جملًا طوال الطريق إلى الصين!

واو، يا لها من مغامرة!

نعم، وبخيلي الحظون إلى الصين منذ ما يقرب من 800 عام! كان الأمر مختلفاً جداً حينها. لقد احتوى المتحف على الكثير من الأشياء من الصين القديمة. لقد جعل المتحف قصة ماركو بولو تعود إلى الحياة فعلاً.

The lesson notes

Marco Polo sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then to Iran.

أبحر ماركو بولو من فينيسيا إلى كوركولا، ثم إلى إيران.

حرف الجر "في" في هذه الجملة يعطي معنى الاستمرار، وهذا المعنى من ضمن استخدامات:

read on (الاستمرار في القراءة) play on

speak on (الاستمرار في الحديث) go on

التعبير "go on" يعطي معنى "إستمر" أو "وَأَبْل أي شيء تفعلة".

○ يصل إلى مكان غير محدد (كبير)، كمدينة أو دولة مثلاً.

► The tourists arrived in Cairo (Egypt) at 10 o'clock.

○ يصل إلى مكان محدد (صغير)، أي نحدد المكان الذي وصل إليه الشخص في المدينة مثلاً.

► The tourists arrived at Cairo Airport at 10 o'clock.

Exercises on Lesson

1 Read and match "A" with "B".

A

B

1 Who was Marco Polo?

a) his experiences.

2 He wrote a diary about

b) voyage by sea.

3 What's your favorite

c) on foot.

4 Marco Polo went on a long

d) all the way to China

5 He rode a camel

e) thing about the vacation?

f) He was an Italian explorer.

- 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:
 vacation - museum - reading - island - century

Rana : What are you ... , Injy?

Injy : Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember my family's ... in Croatia a few years ago.

Rana : That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

Injy : I think it was visiting the Marco Polo ...

Rana : Really? Where is that?

Injy : It's on an ... called Korcula. We took a trip there
 it's a really interesting museum all about the travels of Marco Polo

- 3 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the west to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo*. It was very difficult - the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

- A Choose the correct answer:

1. Marco Polo was an Italian (king - explorer - inventor).
2. When he got to Hormuz, he rode a (bike - horse - camel) all the way to China.

- B Answer these questions:

3. When did Marco Polo visit China? ►
4. What's his diary called? ►

- 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. I - Dahab - went to - with - grandparents - my.



2. go to - I - with - Hurghada - family - my.



Where - last - was - your - trip?

Polo - is - Marco - an - explorer - Italian.

My - wrote - dad - about - a diary - his experiences.

from - sailed - Marco Polo - by ship - to Korcula - Venice.

vacation - enjoy - We - the - last - didn't.

Punctuate the following sentences:

1. the museum had a lot of objects from ancient china

2. what s your favorite thing about the vacation

3. we don t have any drinks here

4. how did people get to india in those days

5. no i can t read it

6. Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"How I spent my last vacation"

ideas to help you:

► Where did you spend it?



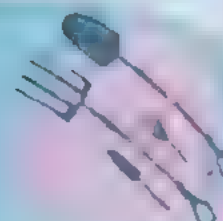

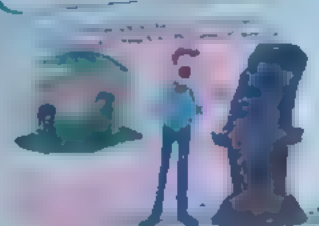


► What did you do there?

► Who did you go with?

► Did you like it or not?



Main Vocabulary

			
discovery اكتشاف	clay طين	large eyes عيون كبيرة	iron farming tools أدوات زراعية حديدية
			
stone حجر	advanced culture ثقافة متقدمة	inspiration إلهام	civilization حضارة
			
archaeologists علماء باع	sculptures تمثيل منحوتات	famous works أعمال مشهورة	

Extra Vocabulary

incredible	لا يُصدق - مذهل - مدعش	beautiful art	فن جميل
sitting position	وضع الجلوس	quality	جودة
humans	شخصيات بشرية	development	تطور

Regular verbs

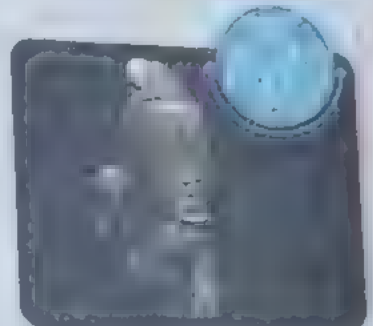
نظام منظم

believed
agreed

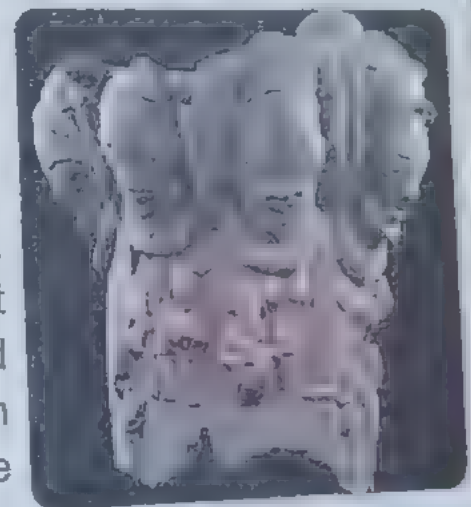
Definitions

- : a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground
- : objects we use to make or do things
- : a type of earth that is sticky when wet
- : modern or well developed
- : an example others use to help create new ideas
- : art made from stone or wood
- : something that people do not understand or cannot explain

Most 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible.



A team of archaeologists went to the area to find out more. They found many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very advanced culture from around 500 BCE to 200 CE. It was a civilization which had the ability to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful art.



They called this culture the 'Nok' civilization, after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures were the inspiration for the famous works of art by the later Ife people, who were in Nigeria from the 11th to the 15th century CE. The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information about the Nok people, so we can only learn about them from their art. Their culture is still a mystery today.



في عام 1908، وجد السكان المحليون في قرية
نوك، وهي دولة تقع في غرب إفريقيا،
مجموعة من العاديات تحت الأرض. كانت تلك الأشياء عبارة
عن منحوتات (بما في ذلك منحوتة) لطيفة جميلة للمنحوتات البشرية
منه. المنحوتات بنفس الأسلوب: كانت لها عيون كبيرة
مربعة، شعر مدوله (مُصَفَّر)، وكانت معظمها في وضعيات الجسوس وانحناء
مختلفة. كانت جودة النحت مذهلة.

من عضاء الآثار إلى المنطقة لاكتشاف المزيد، ووجدوا العديد من
المنحوتات المماثلة في منطقة تبلغ مساحتها مئات الكيلومترات حول نوك. وكانت
هذه أيضًا أدوات زراعية حديدية وحجرية. اتفق علماء الآثار على أن هذه الأشياء كانت
من الأغلب من ثقافة متقدمة جدًا من حوالي سنة 500 قبل الميلاد إلى سنة 200
بعد الميلاد. لقد كانت حاضرة لديها القدرة على تشكيل الحديد والحجارة لصنع الأدوات.
صنعت فنًا جميلًا.



أطلقوا على هذه الثقافة اسم حضارة "نوك"،
نسبة إلى القرية التي عُثِرَ فيها على المنحوتات.
يعتقد البعض أن تلك المنحوتات كانت مصدر الإلهام
لعمال الفنية الشهيرة لشعب الإيفي اللاحقين، الذين
كانوا في نيجيريا من القرن الحادي عشر الميلادي إلى
القرن الخامس عشر الميلادي. اشتهر شعب الإيفي
بصنع منحوتات معدنية جميلة لرؤوس بشرية. ومع
ذلك، لا توجد معلومات مكتوبة عن شعب نوك، لذلك
لا يمكننا التعرف عليهم إلا من خلال أعمالهم الفنية. لا
نحن نعرفهم غامضة حتى اليوم.

GRAMMAR TUTOR

Verb to be in the past

was

I - He - She - It -

Singular ▶▶▶ اي اسم مفرد

were

You - We - They -

Plural ▶▶ اسم جمع

The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative الإثبات

Negative النفي

I
He
She
It
You
We
They

played

I
He
She
It
You
We
They

did not play

didn't play

Questions أسئلة

Did

Did I play?
Did he play?
Did she play?
Did it play?
Did you play?
Did we play?
Did they play?

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

Archaeologists **went** to the area to find out more.

They **had** large eyes and complicated hair styles.

We **use it to talk about finished actions, or situations, in the past.**

يستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت وانتهت في الماضي.

Maggie and Gameela **made** pizza for us last night.

We **usually include a time phrase with the past simple as:**

عادة ما تحتوي جملة الماضي البسيط على كلمات دالة مثل:

yesterday	أمس	last (week)	الأسبوع (الماضي)
ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي
on (date)	في (2020)	one day - once	في يوم ما - ذات مرة

○ Ancient Egyptians thought about thousands of years

○ ... from Sam ...

■ In the negative form, we use (**didn't**) before the infinitive without "to".
 تنفي الماضي البسيط باستخدام (**didn't**) ثم الفعل في المصدر

○ He **didn't** go out with his ...

○ She **didn't** eat all her sandwiches. She **wasn't** hungry.

■ To make questions in the past simple we use (**Did**) + the subject + the infinitive without "to".

■ عند عمل سؤال على الماضي البسيط، بدأ السؤال بـ (**Did**) أو بصيغة بعد أداة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر.

○ Did you read about Nok civilization?

▶ No, I **didn't**.

○ Did she ride her bike last Friday?

▶ Yes, she **did**.

○ What **did** they do in the morning?

▶ They **worked** in the garden.

○ Where **did** he go last week?

▶ He **went** to the park.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

1. clay

a) objects we use to make or do things

2. inspiration

b) art made from stone or wood

3. tools

c) modern or well developed

4. sculptures

d) a type of earth that is sticky when wet

5. advanced

e) a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground.

6. archaeologists

f) an example others use to help create new ideas

7. mystery

g) something that people do not understand or cannot explain

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

clay – iron – Nigeria – culture – archaeologists

The area where the Nok people lived was in (1) ...
found sculptures in this area, and (2) ...
study them. The Nok (3) ...
made sculptures from (4) ...
on. Their sculptures were usually of humans.

People
went there to
was advanced, and its people
, and tools from stone and

3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

found – went – go – weren't – was – had

Sameh : How was your trip, Karim?

Karim : It really good, thanks. We
the Western Desert.

Sameh : Wow! Did you

with your parents?

Karim : No, I was with my uncle. We

some very nice places.

Sameh : Were there any other children on the trip?

Karim : No, there But I fun!

4 Choose the correct answer: was – were

1. I (am – was – weren't) in Paris last month.

2. Mohamed Aboutrika (was – were – weren't) a good player.

3. The children (were – weren't – wasn't) in the classroom. They were in the lab.

4. Merna and I (are – was – were) in the same class last year.

5. The town (were – was – weren't) quiet ten years ago.

6. My grandpa (wasn't – isn't – was) a doctor. He was a teacher.

7. (Was - Were) you tired?
8. (Was - Were) they from Italy?
9. Was there a beach?
10. (Was - Were) Sara there?

- Yes, I (were - wasn't - was).
- No, they (aren't - weren't - were).
- Yes, there (were - was - wasn't).
- No, she (isn't - were - wasn't).

5 Choose the correct answer: Past Simple

1. He (live - lived - lives) in Rome long ago.
2. My sister (tidied - tidy - tidies) her room yesterday.
3. He (brought - was bring - bring) me a bouquet of flowers.
4. The wind (blow - blows - blew) hard yesterday.
5. The tourists (doesn't speak - didn't speak - speaks) Spanish.
6. They (enjoy - enjoyed - enjoys) their trip last year.
7. (Does - Is - Did) he catch the bus? No, he (did - don't - didn't).
8. Everybody (watched - was watch - watch) the match.
9. Amina (doesn't - don't - didn't) clean the bathroom yesterday.
10. The car (was stop - stop - stopped) at the lights.
11. Did they (swim - swam - swims) on Saturday?
► Yes, they (did - don't - didn't).
12. My mom (bought - s buying - buys) me a new T-shirt last week.
13. She didn't (got up - gets up - get up) early yesterday.
14. (Are - Do - Did) archeologists find any artifacts last year?
15. Al Ahly didn't (played - plays - play) well last night.
16. Many people (come - came - comes) to my wedding two days ago.
17. Did he (go - goes - went) to the park last weekend?
18. My friends (doesn't finish - aren't finish - didn't finish) their homework.

Did Ahmed (help - helps - helped) you bake the cake yesterday?
 When did she (slept - sleeps - sleep) last night?
 Was - Were - Did) she buy a new dress?
 Was - Were - Did) you at home last night?

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

sculptures - The - were - styles - the - in - all - same.

metal - found - a lot - sculptures - Archeologists - of.

is still - Nok's - mystery - today - culture.

we - learn - can - from their - about cultures - art.

in - was - There - discovery - Nigeria - a surprising.

objects - Who - these - discovered - great?

I'm - interested - not - civilization - the Nok - in.

My - like - sister - didn't - sculptures - the.

culture - The - was - Nok - advanced.

written - There - isn't - information - Nok - about the.

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. there was a discovery in the small village of nok in nigeria, a country in west africa



2. can you help me please



3. yes she did



4. we didn't enjoy our vacation



5. when did hatem have his lunch



6. my parents weren't at the party yesterday



8 Write an email of (100) words to your friend Haitham:

Tell him what you and your family did last week. Your email address is fayez@yahoo.com. And your friend's email is haitham@gmail.com

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

الأساطير والأماكن في الأرض



deserted (adj)
منبهر - مهترق



dromedaries
إجمال العرياء (نوع من الجمال)



caravan
القافلة



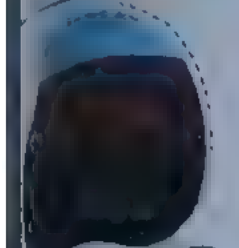
sand dunes
كثبان رملية



wasteland of the desert
الأرض القاحلة من الصحراء




wander (v)
يتجول - يهيم



adventure
مغامرة



legends
أساطير



swaying
يتأرجح - يهتلك

Extra Vocabulary

exhausted	متعب - متعب جدًا	terrible weather	طقس مروع (سيئ جدًا)
small cabin	كابينة صغيرة جدًا	a bit clearer	أوضح قليلًا
intending	مخطط - مخطط - مخطط	strong winds	رياح قوية
empty land	أرض فارغة	boiling hot	حار جدًا - (يعني من حرارة الحرارة)

A - 11111

boring day

يوم مممل

freezing cold

بارد جدًا - مقيع - برد قارس

long walks

تمشية لمسافات طويلة

possible

مممكن

dangerous

خطير

good news

أخبار جيدة

lost

تائه (فُضِل طريقه)

sad

حزين

mysterious

غامض

strange noises

أصوات غريبة

Prepositions

by day

نهارًا - في النهار

on the horizon

في الأفق

by night

ليلاً - في الليل

go for a walk

تذهب للمشي

move up and down

تتحرك صاعدة وهابطة

for the first time

لأول مرة

go on

يستمر - تواصل

come up

تُسرَق

Other words

Gobi Desert

صحراء جوبي (في الصين)

light of a candle

موء شمعة

Noah Oasis

واحة نوح

each step

كل خطوة

port

ميناء

waves

موج

telescope

تلسكوب - منظار

voices

أصوات

local people

سكان محليون

drums

طبول

captain

مبطلان

mysterious

غمض

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

roll يدور - تتدحرج
sway يهزج - يترنح
cross يعبّر
wander يتجول
boil يغلي
look like يشبه

rolled
swayed
crossed
wandered
boiled
looked like

Present

Past

last يستمر - يدوم
seem يبدو
explore يستكشف
describe يصف
move يحرك
imagine يتخيل - يمتوّر

lasted
seemed
explored
described
moved
imagined

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

know يعرف
freeze يتجمّد
say يقول
lose يتوه - يضل الطريق
leave يغادر

knew
froze
said
lost
left

Present

Past

see يرى
come up يُشْرَق
feel يشعر
spend (time) يقضي (وقت)
write يكتب

saw
came up
felt
spent
wrote

Definitions

S B

Student's look

- wandered : walked about without a direction
- wasteland : a landscape where nothing lives
- legend : a very old and famous story
- fascinated by : very interested in
- swaying : moving from side to side
- caravan : a group of camels and people traveling together

Primary Revision



/3/

huge	كبير	measure (v)	قياس
fridge	ثلاجة	treasure	كنز
age	عمر - سن	usually	عادة
joke	مزحة	leisure	وقت فراغ
dangerous	خطير	Asia	آسيا
language	لغة	television	تلفزيون - تليفاز
bridge	جسر	pleasure	سرور - بهجة
village	قرية		
damaged (Adj)	تالف		
Jerry	جيرى (اسم)		
just	فقط - للتو		
arranged (v)	مُرتب - مُنشى		
luggage	أمتعة السفر		
Japan	اليابان		

The lesson notes

■ **There was good news.**

■ كانت هناك أخبارًا جيدة.

0 نلاحظ أن كلمة **"news"** منتهية بحرف **"s"** ومعناها باللغة العربية "أخبار" جمع. لا توجد كلمة في اللغة الإنجليزية مفردة ومعناها "أخبار".
أي ليس له جمع.

► **That happy news is very good to hear.**

0 نلاحظ كلمة **"information"** معناها باللغة العربية "معلومات" جمع. لا توجد كلمة في اللغة الإنجليزية مفردة ومعناها "معلومات".
ليس له جمع.

► **This information is useful. I need it to do my homework.**

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert 'the dry sea' in their language.



The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers - no people, no plants, no water.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold - sometimes there was snow. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still...

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

ماركو بولو يعبر الصحراء



ماركو بولو في الحادية والعشرين من عمره عندما ذهب إلى صحراء جوبي لأول مرة عام 1275م. كان مفتونًا بالكناس البرملية التي كانت تتحرك مع كل خطوة تخطوها الجمال.

بعد أن سافر بولو إلى بلاد الهند، عاد إلى بلاد فارس حيث التقى بالسلطان الذي كان قد أرسله ليعبر الصحراء.

بعد أن أطلق السكان المحليون على صحراء جوبي اسم "الصحراء العظيمة"، بدأ بولو في كتابة كتابه "رحلة إلى الهند".

في شمال في القاملة ببطء طاعده وهبطت على الأرض. كان بولو في الصحراء العظيمة، يذهبوا نحو "لوت نور"، التي كانت تسمى "الصحراء العظيمة". بعد أن سافر بولو إلى بلاد الهند، عاد إلى بلاد فارس حيث التقى بالسلطان الذي كان قد أرسله ليعبر الصحراء. بعد أن أطلق السكان المحليون على صحراء جوبي اسم "الصحراء العظيمة"، بدأ بولو في كتابة كتابه "رحلة إلى الهند".

في عام 1275م، كان بولو في الصحراء العظيمة، يذهبوا نحو "لوت نور"، التي كانت تسمى "الصحراء العظيمة". بعد أن سافر بولو إلى بلاد الهند، عاد إلى بلاد فارس حيث التقى بالسلطان الذي كان قد أرسله ليعبر الصحراء. بعد أن أطلق السكان المحليون على صحراء جوبي اسم "الصحراء العظيمة"، بدأ بولو في كتابة كتابه "رحلة إلى الهند".

في عام 1275م، كان بولو في الصحراء العظيمة، يذهبوا نحو "لوت نور"، التي كانت تسمى "الصحراء العظيمة". بعد أن سافر بولو إلى بلاد الهند، عاد إلى بلاد فارس حيث التقى بالسلطان الذي كان قد أرسله ليعبر الصحراء. بعد أن أطلق السكان المحليون على صحراء جوبي اسم "الصحراء العظيمة"، بدأ بولو في كتابة كتابه "رحلة إلى الهند".



The mysterious island

الجزيرة الغامضة

Day 1, January 17th

Today was a long, boring, day with terrible weather ❶. The ship didn't leave the port, so my journey to the mysterious island ❷ wasn't possible ❸. I can see the island through my telescope ❹.

The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees ❺ and there are green mountains at its land center ❻. It's exciting to imagine ❼ what I could find there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.

Day 2, January 19th

I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds ❽. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day ❾. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle ❿ in my small cabin. Today the sky is a bit clearer - there is some hope for my journey, perhaps - but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

Day 3, January 21st

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin ❾ last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: tomorrow, the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will leave when the sun comes up ❿. I'm very excited: soon I can explore the mysterious island!

❸ ممكن

❷ جزيرة غامضة

❶ طقس سيئ للغاية

❺ وسط أرضها

❽ أشجار النخيل

❹ من خلال تليسكوبي

❾ لتضية الوقت خلال النهار

❽ رياح عاتية (شديدة)

❼ تتخيل

❿ تشرق

❾ في مقصورتي

❿ على ضوء شمعة

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

A

B

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. fascinated by | a) moving from side to side |
| 2. caravan | b) a very old and famous story |
| 3. swaying | c) very interested in |
| 4. wasteland | d) walked about without a direction |
| 5. wandered | e) a group of camels and people traveling together |
| 6. legend | f) a landscape where nothing lives |

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

caravan - water - dromedaries - desert - swaying

The ① _____ in the ② _____ moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the ③ _____. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers - no people, no plants, no ④ _____.

3 Write the following words in the correct column:

huge - measure - fridge - treasure - television -
Asia - usually - dangerous - joke - age

/ə/

/ɜ/

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Marco Polo was twenty one when, in 1271, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert 'the dry sea' in their language.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "fascinated" means (bored - tired - amazed).
2. Some of the dunes were (sixty - forty - twenty) meters long.

B Answer these questions:

3. How old was Marco Polo when he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time?
▶
4. What did the local people call the Gobi Desert?
▶

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. was - Marco - great - a - traveler - Polo.
▶
2. by - Marco Polo - fascinated - the sand - dunes - was.
▶
3. It - mysterious - is - a - place - and dangerous.
▶
4. dromedaries - What - the - were - like?
▶ ?

5. leave - The - didn't - port - the - ship.



6. was - I - and down - sad - day - yesterday - all.



7. friends - breakfast - had - my - with - I.



8. explore - I - can - the - island - mysterious!



6 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. which egyptian anima does that animal look like



2. i visit my grandparents every friday



3. yes she played football yesterday



4. ahmed zaki was a famous actor



5. we love to read about marco polo



6. my father didn t let me go out



Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



go on a felucca
يركب على متن فلوكة



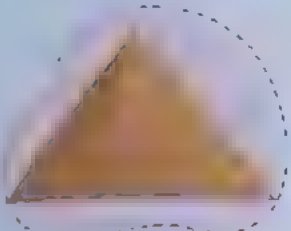
on the River Nile
في نهر النيل



sailing boat
قارب شراعي



sail (n) (v)
شراع - يُبجر



the Great Pyramid
الهرم الأكبر



warm sunshine
أشعة الشمس الدافئة



skills
مهارات

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Adjectives

lovely way

طريقة جميلة

magical

سحري

relaxing

مريح

quiet

هادئ

peaceful

مُشالِم - هادئ

amazing experience

تجربة مذهشة

awesome

مُدهش - مُذهل - رائع

ancient

قديم جدًا

incredible

لا تُصدَّق - مذهشة

wonderful

رائع

Other words

traditional Egyptian music

موسيقى مصرية تراثية

moved gently

كانت تتحرك بهدوء

difficult to sail

من الصعب أن تبحر

along the way

على طول الطريق

life

حياة

on board the felucca

على متن الفلوكة

What a day!

يا له من يوم!

made of

مصنوع من

Tip!

A diary has features that are different from other types of text.

- It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.
- It is usually written in an informal style and uses first person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.)
- It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.
- It usually describes people, places, and experiences.

المدونة هي نص يختلف عن الأنواع الأخرى من النصوص.

- عادة ما يحتوي على فقرات قصيرة، كل منها تتحدث عما حدث في يوم واحد.
- عادة ما يكون مكتوبة بأسلوب غير رسمي وتستخدم ضمائر المتكلم (أ، نحن، أنا، إلخ).
- عادة ما تصف أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآرائه.
- عادة ما تصف الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

6 January

Today, I had an amazing experience ... I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful - a lovely way to travel.

We stopped to see some incredible things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were awesome! The pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful.



... afternoon, we had a delightful...
... magical and relaxing. What a day! I had
a wonderful experience!

بعد طرفة بدمية رائعة اليوم.. لقد ركبت مراكب في نهر النيل الملوكة هي قارب
مصري أصلي وهي مصنوعة من الخشب.



لقد كنت أعتقد أن الإبحار بالمراكب صعب.

في النهر تحت أشعة الشمس



نوفما لرؤية بعض الأشياء
رأيت أهرامات الجيزة لأول مرة في حياتي - بعد خضعت
الأهرامات ضخمة وكان لون الحجارة ذهبي. يبلغ ارتفاع الهرم الأكبر
أطول الأهرامات الثلاثة، 147 مترا. لقد كان رائعا

لقد كنت أعتقد أن الإبحار بالمراكب صعب.
في النهر تحت أشعة الشمس
لقد كنت أعتقد أن الإبحار بالمراكب صعب.
في النهر تحت أشعة الشمس

Exercises

on

Lesson



1 Read and match "A" with "B":

A

B

1. I went on a felucca
2. The trip
3. The boat had two
4. A felucca is a
5. I saw the Pyramids

- a) traditional Egyptian sailing boat.
- b) of Giza for the first time in my life.
- c) was amazing.
- d) on the River Nile!
- e) white sails.
- f) difficult to sail.



2

Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Today I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall, serious man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the skills to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the golden sunshine. We stopped to see some incredible things along the way too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life - they were awesome. The pyramids were huge and the stones were a sort of golden color.



Choose the correct answer:

1. A felucca is made of (metal - wood - plastic).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "difficult" is (hard - wrong - easy).



Answer these questions:

3. Who was the captain of the felucca?



4. How were the pyramids?



3

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. went on - I - on the - a felucca - River Nile!



2. made - felucca - A - isn't - metal - of.



3. of the - Karim - the - was - captain - boat.



4. felucca - A - is - to - sail - difficult.



5. two - boat - white - had - sails - The.



6. the felucca - We - lunch - board - had - on
▶
7. a - had - I - experience - wonderful - such
▶
8. trip - Did - enjoy - you - the?
▶

. I

?

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i saw the pyramids of giza
▶
2. no he didn't come with us
▶
3. noha amira and rania's birthdays are in december
▶
4. what do you want to eat
▶
5. welcome to egypt
▶

5 Write an email of (50, words to your friend Ramy:

Tell him about a day you spent with your family out. Your email address is Sara@gmail.com. And your friend's email address is Ramy@gmail.com.

✱ ✱ ✱
✱ ✱ ✱ ✱ ✱

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 9 on Unit 5

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Total



(3Ms)

1

Listen and choose the correct answer.

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. A felucca is made of (glass - wood - metal)
2. A felucca is a (new - modern - traditional) sailing boat.
3. I went on a felucca on the (Red Sea - River Nile - Lake Nasser)

2

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3Ms)

camel - century - explorer - voyage

Hosam: Who was Marco Polo?

Ayman: He was an Italian He visited China
hundreds years ago.

Hosam: When did he go there?

Ayman: He went there in the 13th

Hosam: How did he go there?

Ayman: He went on a long by sea.

Hosam: What did he do next?

Ayman: He rode a all the way to China.

3

Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. I (go - went - am going) to the Zoo yesterday.
2. When someone finds something that people didn't know about, it's a/an
(discovery - invention - inspiration).
3. She (was - wasn't - were) at school yesterday. Yesterday was a holiday
4. Mustafa went on a trip down the Nile on a (car - felucca - taxi).

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Last week, Samar and her friends went on a school trip to Cairo and Giza by bus. In the early morning, her father took her to school where she caught the bus. They reached Cairo at nine o'clock. First, they visited the

museum, where they enjoyed seeing many statues. Then, they visited the zoo and saw different animals. They had lunch there and took many pictures. After that, they visited the Pyramids. They came back home at ten o'clock. They were very happy.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. They went to Cairo and Giza by (car - train - bus).
2. The opposite of the underlined word "early" is (late - quickly - slowly).

B Answer these questions:

3. How long did the trip take?

4. What did the students see in the zoo?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. last year - treasure - found - The travelers,
2. animals - see - types of - you - What - can?
3. people - Local - objects - found - some.

6 Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

no i don't want to go to the club on monday

7 Write an email to your English friend Jack:

(5Ms)

Tell him about the great discoveries the archaeologists make in your country from time to time. Tell him about the monuments and treasures they find, and where they put them. Your email address is ali@yahoo.com. And your friend's email address is jack@hotmail.com.

From :

To :

Subject :

Test 10 on Unit 5

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. (Ibn Batuta - Marco Polo) was an Italian explorer.
2. He visited (Egypt - Italy - China) in the 13th century.
3. He wrote a (story - journey - book) about his experience.

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

1. The local people found some unusual ... under the ground.
2. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of ...
3. The ... were all in the same style.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. A team of (teachers - doctors - traders - archaeologists) found many sculptures around Nok.
2. I (study - studied - am studying - studies) math and science yesterday.
3. The dromedaries in the (carnival - caravan - party - river) moved slowly up and down the dunes.
4. He didn't (come - comes - coming - came) to school last week.

4 Read and match "A" with "B":

- | A | B |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Where was your last vacation? | a) the Gobi Desert in 1275. |
| 2. In the desert, it's warm in the sun | b) strong winds. |
| 3. He went into | c) many sculptures in that area. |
| 4. How does the writer feel on his first day? | d) but cool in the shade. |
| 5. A team of archaeologists found | e) He is bored. |
| | f) I went to Hurghada with my family. |

5 Read the text and answer the questions: (6Ms)

Have you ever read any stories about traveling in the old days? In the old days, people traveled on foot or horseback. Nowadays, they travel by air. It's the quickest way to travel. They also travel by sea or by land in trains or cars. People travel for different reasons. Some people go on business. And some travel for their health. Others travel for pleasure. They want to see other places, visit famous towns or cities and buy souvenirs from different countries. Some students travel to complete their studies. This gives them the chance to have better jobs.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Traveling by land means traveling by (trains - planes - ships - boats).
2. Students travel to complete their (jobs - tests - studies - lessons).

B Answer these questions:

3. What's the quickest way to travel?
4. How did people travel in the past?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (3Ms)

1. The museum - had - objects - a lot of - from China - ancient. ▶
2. you - help - Can - me, - please? ▶
3. experience - an amazing - had - The scientists. ▶

7 Punctuate the following sentence: (1M)

- are dina and yasmin good at planting trees ▶

8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"Deserts"

► Ideas to help you:

desert - hard life - little rain - little water - hot weather - sand dunes - animals - people - tents



A smiling man with short dark hair, wearing a green t-shirt, is looking towards a potted plant on a balcony. The background shows a building with a red door and a white wall.

Unit 6

Taking care العناية بالبيئة

In this unit I will....

- listen, read, research, and write about making things at home
- talk about quantities
- find the meaning of words in a text
- learn how to pronounce /ə/ in sentences
- learn about personal care in Ancient Egypt
- write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients
- research and create a poster about different spices

Lesson 1

1

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



candle

شمعة



wax

شمع



perfume oil

زيت العطور



drops

قطرات



wick

فتيل



cotton rope

حبل قطني



popsicle sticks

أعواد المثلجات



squeeze

يعصر - يضغط



press

يضغط



heat (v)

يُسخّن



stir (v)

يُقلب

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

instructions

تعليمات - إرشادات

soap crystals

بلورات الصابون

palm trees

أشجار النخل

petals

بتلات (أوراق) الزهور

bottle

زجاجة

salt

ملح

step (n)

خطوة

sugar

سكر

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
listen	listened	discuss	discussed
need	needed	melt	melted
smell	smelled	use	used
press	pressed	squeeze	squeezed
heat	heated	stir	stirred

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
do	did	hold	held
read	read	see	saw
make	made	think	thought
say	said	find	found

Tip!

When you listen for quantities, remember to listen/look for numbers and words about measurements. For example, kilograms, grams, liters, milliliters, spoons, packages, cans.

عندما تستمع إلى الكميات، تذكر أن تستمع / تبحث عن أرقام وكلمات عن القياسات. على سبيل المثال، كيلو جرامات، لترات، مليلترات، ملاعق، عبوات، علب.



- Mom** : Hi, Laila. I love making things. Why don't we make something new?
- Laila** : That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?
- Mom** : I have some perfume oil. We can use it to make candles.
- Laila** : Candles? Wow! I love it!
- Mom** : Here are the instructions. Can you read them out to me?
- Laila** : Right. First, we need some wax.
- Mom** : Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?
- Laila** : It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."
- Mom** : Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?
- Laila** : We need some perfume oil.
- Mom** : Here. These are little bottles of lemon oil. Mmm... they smell lovely. How much do we need?
- Laila** : The instructions say, "Squeeze in about 40 drops of oil."
- Mom** : Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and press them on the tops of the candles.
- Laila** : Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one wick - that's the little cotton rope inside the candle.
- Mom** : Oh, yes. And we need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.
- Laila** : So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right? Now, what do we need to do first?
- Mom** : Let's see... "Step one: Heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well."

الأم : مرحبًا يا ليلي. أنا أحب صنع الأشياء. لم لا نصنع شيئًا جديدًا؟

ليلي : هذه فكرة رائعة. هل لديك شيء معين في بالك؟

الأم : لدي بعض من زيت العطور. يمكننا استخدامه لصنع الشموع.

ليلي : الشموع؟ واو لقد أحببت الفكرة!

الأم : ها هي الإرشادات. هل يمكنك قراءتها لي؟

ليلي : حسنًا. أولاً، نحتاج إلى بعض الشمع.

الأم : ها هو. إنه شمع نخيل من أشجار النخيل المصرية. إنه يصنع شموعًا جميلة حقًا. كم نحتاج منه؟

ليلي : تقول الإرشادات، "استخدم 450 جرامًا من الشمع لصنع ثلاث شمعات".

الأم : حسنًا، يوجد حوالي 500 جرام هنا. هذا كافٍ. ماذا بعد ذلك؟

ليلي : نحتاج إلى بعض من زيت العطور.

الأم : ها هو. هذه زجاجات صغيرة من زيت الليمون. أمممم ... رائحتها جميلة. كم نحتاج منها؟

ليلي : تقول الإرشادات، "أضف حوالي 40 نقطة من الزيت".

الأم : حسنًا. ويمكننا أن نأخذ حوالي 15 زهرة ونضغطها فوق الشموع.

ليلي : نعم، هذه فكرة جيدة. بعدها سنحتاج إلى كوب زجاجي لكل شمعة وفتيل - والفتيل هو الحبل القطني الصغير الذي يوجد داخل الشمعة.

الأم : أوه، نعم. ونحتاج إلى بعض أعواد المثلجات لتثبيت الفتائل في أعلى الأكواب.

ليلي : إذن ما نحتاجه هو ثلاثة أكواب وثلاث فائل وثلاثة أعواد مثلجات، أليس كذلك؟ الآن، ماذا علينا أن نفعل أولاً؟

الأم : لنرى ... "الخطوة الأولى: سخّن الشمع ليذويه، ثم قلبه جيدًا".

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

A

1. What do Leila and her mom make?
2. Here is the palm wax.
3. How much wax do we need?
4. I have little bottles of perfume oil
5. What do we need to do first?

B

- a) 450 grams of wax.
- b) I think you need perfume.
- c) Step one: Heat the wax to melt it.
- d) It makes really nice candles.
- e) They smell lovely.
- f) They make the candles.

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

palm trees – instructions – press – grams – wax

Mom : Laila, here are the ① for making the candles.

Laila : Right. First, we need some ②

Mom : Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian ③ It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

Laila : It says, "Use 450 ④ of wax to make three candles."

Mom : Okay, there's about 500 grams here. What's next?

Laila : The instructions say, "Squeeze in about 40 drops of perfume oil."

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. We sometimes use the light of (sun - candles - oil) at night when it's dark.
2. (Perfume - Cooking - Water) oils usually smell nice.
3. I'm happy when I feel (clouds - ropes - drops) of rain falling on my head.
4. Candles are made of (cotton - sticks - wax).
5. (Palm - Flower - Bottle) trees give us dates.
6. The (wick - wax - stick) is the little cotton rope inside the candle.

7. Popsicle (sticks - ropes - trees) are usually thin and long.
8. I wash my hands with water and (oil - soap - soup) before having my meals.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. oils - Perfume - lovely - smell.
▶
2. I - two - have - lemon - bottles of - oil.
▶
3. need - We - one - each - candle - glass for.
▶
4. the - Heat - wax - to - it - melt.
▶
5. don't - I - like - candles - making.
▶
6. do - need to - we - candles - make - What?
▶

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what do laila and her mom make
▶
2. ahmed is such a clever student
▶
3. do you like pizza
▶
4. no my mom can t drive cars
▶
5. it s very cold in january
▶
6. yes but you don t need wax
▶

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



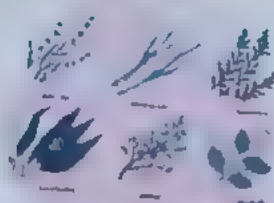
paintings

رسومات



festival

مهرجان - احتفال



herbs

أعشاب



preserve (v)

يحفظ

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Foods and drinks

barley

شعير

lentils

عدس

vegetables

خضراوات

meat

لحم

onions

بصل

fish

سمك

garlic

ثوم

ducks

بط

beans

فول - حبوب - فاصوليا

geese

أوز

wheat

قمح

chickens

دجاج

bread

خبز

honey

عسل

eggs

بيض

cream

مشطة

cheese

جبنة - جبن

dates

بلح - تمر

spices

توابل

cakes

كيك - كعك

salt

ملح

figs

تين

taste better

مذاقه أفضل

sweet fruit drinks

مشروبات فواكه مسكرة

Recipe & Ingredients

شاي الكركديه

كوكيز برقائق اسفلت وورد

دهن

دقيق سدابليا

سكر

خلط مرلي

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

depend on يعتمد على

depended on

cook

يطبخ

COOKED

last يستمر

lasted

taste

لذو مدق

tasted

add يضيف

added

dry

يجفف

dried

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

take care

يهتم

took care

show

نظهر

SHOWED

eat

يأكل

ate

grow

يزرع

GROW

drink

يشرب

drank

have

يسأل

HAD

1 from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time

2 of their bodies and ate very well! So what did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often

3 how much water came from 4. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions garlic, 5, and beans, and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and 6. People used this to make bread and they ate a lot of this every day.



1 يبين

2 كيف

3 كيف

4 كيف

5 كيف

6 كيف

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at **festivals** 7. They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats. There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! People often used honey with bread and **cream** 8 to make cakes. They also used a few dates or **figs** 9 to make sweet fruit drinks. Some families also knew how to use **spices** 10 and **herbs** 11 to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to **preserve** 12 food. For example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

- 7 احتفالات - مهرجانات
8 قشطة
9 لبن
10 توابل
11 أعشاب
12 يحفظ

GRAMMAR STUDY

Nouns

■ **Nouns are divided into countable nouns and uncountable nouns.**

■ تنقسم الأسماء إلى أسماء تُعد (تجمع) وأسماء لا تعد (لا تجمع).

■ **Most nouns are countable and have a singular and plural form.**

■ معظم الأسماء تُعد، ولها صيغة مُفرد وصيغة جَمْع.

girl → girls	story → stories	loaf → loaves
glass → glasses	mango → mangoes	brush → brushes
watch → watches	man → men	mouse → mice

► I ate a **mango**.

► My brother ate two **mangoes**.

■ **There are other nouns which are uncountable. They do not have a plural form.**

■ بعض الأسماء لا تُعد، وهي التي ليس لها صيغة جمع وتُعامل معاملة المفرد مثل:
○ أسماء مأكولات ومشروبات:

cheese - bread - butter - rice - milk - water - orange juice - apple -
juice - meat - sugar - salt - tea - oil - coffee - mint

○ أسماء أخرى:

time - money - news - information - homework - traffic - help -
weight - paint - furniture

Is there any butter in the bowl?

► There's a little money in my mom's bag. This news is important.

○ بعض الكلمات يمكن أن تُستخدَم كأسماء تُعد وأسماء لا تُعد.

(fish - food - ice cream - time - oil - juice)

I like making ice cream with my mom.

► She bought two ice creams an hour ago.



Expressions of quantity

a lot of

الكثير من

much

كثير من "للكمية"

many

العديد من - الكثير "للعدد"

some - any

بعض - أي

a little

قليل "للكمية"

a few

قليل "للعدد"

a lot of

○ تُستخدَم قبل الأسماء التي لا تُعد والتي لا تُعد

► There's a lot of milk in the bottle.

► I have a lot of friends.

some

○ تُستخدَم قبل الأسماء التي لا تُعد والتي لا تُعد

► There's some bread in the basket.

(تُستخدَم في الجمل المثبتة)

► There are some students in the laboratory.

(تُستخدَم في الجمل المنفية)

any

○ تُستخدَم قبل الأسماء التي لا تُعد والتي لا تُعد

► Is there any water in the glass?

(تُستخدَم في الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية)

► There aren't any eggs in the fridge.

(تُستخدَم في الجمل المنفية والاستفهامية)

many

○ تُستخدَم قبل الأسماء التي تُعد فقط

► There aren't many eggs in the fridge. We can't have eggs for dinner.

much

○ تُستخدَم قبل الأسماء التي لا تُعد فقط

► There isn't much oil in the bottle.

a few

○ تُستخدَم قبل الأسماء التي تُعد فقط

Step Ahead

► There are a few stores in this street.

a little

○ تُسْتَخْدَم قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد فقط

► There's a little sugar in her tea

الجمع، وإلا استخدم ما مع الأسماء التي لا تعد تعاملهما معاملة المفرد. (any some) ○

يوجد (للمفرد) There is

يوجد (للمجمع) There are

- There is some milk in this bottle.
- There are some tomatoes in the bag
- There isn't any salt in this food. She forgot to put some.
- There aren't any oranges in the market. I can't see any.

How many - How much

How many كم عدد

■ We use "How many" ...? to ask about quantities of countable things, like leaves, lemons, cars or people. We can reply to the question with a number (a / an / one, five, twenty), or an approximate amount (some, a few, a lot of).

■ نستخدم (How many) لنسأل عن عدد "اسم بُعد"، ودائمًا الاسم الذي يليها يكون جمعًا. ويمكن أن نجيب على هذا السؤال باستخدام عدد (a / an / one, five, twenty ...). أو باستخدام أحد تعبيرات الكمية التقريبية (some / a few / a lot of ...).

● How many lemons do we need for the lemonade?

► We need five lemons.

► We need a few lemons.

How much ما كمية

■ We use How much ...? to ask about quantities of uncountable things, like tea, sugar, oil or grass. We can only reply to this question with an approximate amount (some, a little, a lot of).

نستخدم (How much) لسؤال عن كمية "اسم لا تعد"، ودائما الاسم الذي يليها يكون اسم مفرد لا تعد، ويمكن أن نحب على هذا السؤال باستخدام احد تعبيرات الكمية العربية (... / ... / ...).

► How much oil do we need?

► We need a little oil.

Remember

we can also talk about quantities of both countable and uncountable things using measurements.

يمكننا التحدث عن كميات الأسماء التي تعد والتي لا تعد باستخدام أدوات القياس.

(..... - -)

► We need 400 grams of chicken.

► Please buy of milk

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

grew - floods - Nile - depended

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew different vegetables, fruit and grains.

2 Read and match "A" with "B":

1. There is some

Are there any

3. There are some

Is there any

a) oranges on the table.

b) cheese on the plate?

c) dates on the palm tree?

d) juice in the packet.

3

Read and match " " with " ":

2

1. There is a little
2. Are there many
3. There are a few
4. Is there much

- a) salt in your soup?
- b) tomatoes in the kitchen.
- c) water in the bottle
- d) apples in the fridge?

4

Read and complete the mini-dialogues with the words in the box:

How many - How much

1. Hani : milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?
Grandma: Just a little milk, thanks Hani.
2. Fareeda : students are there in your English class, Dalia?
Dalia : There are about forty, I think.
3. Sherif : math problems did you do yesterday?
Kareem : Just a few. They were difficult.
4. Rana : I'm going to the market now. tomatoes do we need?
Mom : Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit.
5. Ahmed : water is there in the river today?
Ali : A lot! It rained all day yesterday.

5

Choose the correct answer:

1. (How many - How much) lemons do we need for the lemonade?
2. We need (a few - a little) apples to make the pie.
3. (How many - How much) oil do we need? We need (a few - a little) oil.
4. (How many - How much) chairs are there in the room?
5. There is (a lot of - a little) juice left. We can all drink 2 rounds.
6. She needs (a few - a little) help.
7. (How many - How much) movies did you see this year?
8. They're having (a lot of - a few) fun.
9. (How many - How much) mint do you put in your tea?
10. (How many - How much) butter do you need for the recipe?

Connect 6

205

11. Give me (a few - a little) more grapes.
12. I've lost (a few - a little) weight.
13. I'll be back in (a few - a little) minutes
14. (How many - How much) languages can you speak?
15. (How many - How much) paint do you need to cover the walls?
16. There were (a few - a little) birds there.
17. Please hurry. We don't have (a lot of - a few) time.
18. Can I have (a few - a little) sugar in my coffee, please?
19. There isn't (some - any) bread. Can you buy (some - a few)?
20. I don't have (a lot of - a few) money for Mom's present.
21. (How many - How much) candles does 450 grams of wax make?
22. Do we have (some - any) ice cream? I'd really like (some - any).
23. (How many - How much) brothers and sisters do you have?
24. There are (some - any) girls from Luxor in my class.
25. There aren't (some - any) tigers in Egypt.
26. Are there (some - any) lemons?
27. (There is - There are) a lot of books on the shelf.
28. (There is - There are) a lot of sugar in my cup.
29. (There is - There are) a little butter in this recipe.
30. (There is - There are) a few desks in my class.
31. (How many - How much) orange juice do you need?
32. (How many - How much) oranges do you need?
33. There's some (lemons - grapes - rice) in the bag.
34. There are some (butter - potatoes - bread) over there.
35. Is there any (tomatoes - eggs - butter) in the pan?
36. Are there any (carrots - salt - oil) in the salad?
37. There (am - is - are) some cheese in the fridge.
38. There (am - is - are) some lemons in the tree.
39. (Am - Is - Are) there any honey in the jar?
40. (Am - Is - Are) there any jars of honey in the cupboard?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. took care of - Egyptians - Ancient - bodies - their.

2. did - eat - Egyptians - Ancient - the?
3. in Ancient - Egypt - meat - a little - ate.
4. Ancient Egypt - in - a lot of - were - bees.
5. of milk - bottles - are there - many?
6. preserve - food - knew - to - how.
7. oil - much - do - need - How - we?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. my cousin doesn't like ice cream
2. how many cups of coffee does ramy drink
3. the water of the Nile always helped the ancient Egyptians
4. how much money do we need Adel
5. yes Samira plays tennis every Thursday

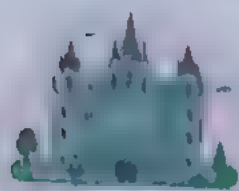
Write an email of (50) words to your friend Noha:

Tell her about a meal you helped your mom preparing. Tell her what ingredients you used and how you made it. Your email address is rana@hotmail.com. And your friend's email address is noha@gmail.com.

[illegible]

Lesson 3
Part 1

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



palace

قصر



crown

تاج



scepter

مؤتجان



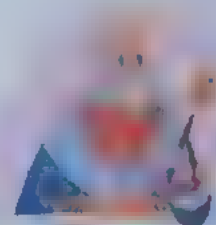
throne

كرسي العرش



queen

ملكة



king

ملك



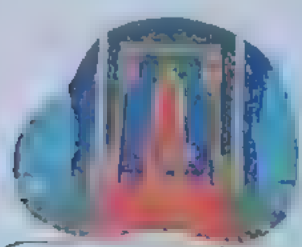
prince

أمير



princess

ميرة



royal

ميكى (خاص بالاعائلات الملكية)



lean

يميل - يستند - يحنى



dust (n)

تراب



astonished (adj)

مدهش

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

statues	تماثيل	furniture	أثاث (موبيليا)
royal bathroom	حمام ملكي	carpets	سجاد
		curtains	ستائر

at once

put on

pick up

on

how

طريق

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
lean يحمل - يميل	leaned	explain يشرح	explained
knock يطلق	knocked	pick up يأخذ	picked up
enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	explore يستكشف	explored
pass يمر	passed	notice يلاحظ	noticed
clean يُنظف	cleaned	hurry يُسرع	hurried

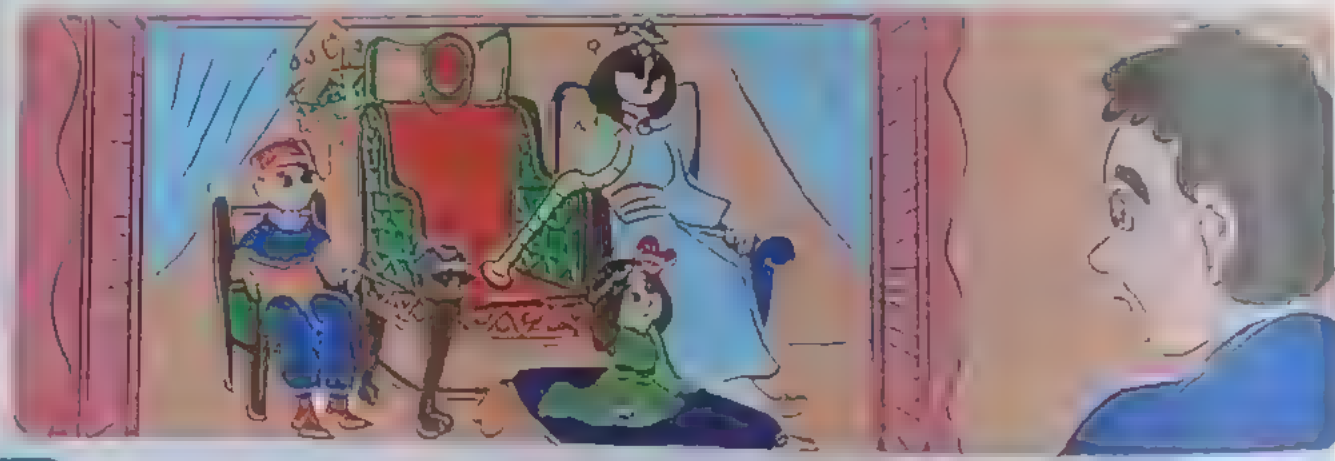
Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
put on يرتدي	put on	understand يفهم	understood
come يأتي	came	fall يسقط	fell
go يذهب	went	get out يخرج	got out
hear يسمع	heard	sit يجلس	sat
spend (years) يقضي (سنوات)	spent	tell يخبر	told

THE FAIRY TALES

1. Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are full of interesting and precious things - old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.
2. One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the royal children - the prince and the princess - are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty, he is missing!
3. Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again. He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is leaning dangerously over the princess's head. Peter knows he must find the king at once!
4. He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind doors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! I'm enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is astonished. When the king comes out, he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the dust off me. Dust damages the painting, so I simply had to have a bath."



5. Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says. "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. Otherwise, they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the painting to pick up the scepter.
6. Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged - and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!

[illegible]

2. ...
...
...
...
...
...
...

3. **سير معتمد:** وسير معتمد، من سيرة أخرى، يمكنه رؤية الناج واصطولجان، لكن سير معتمد، كما في سيرة أخرى، يصر بصورة خطيرة نحو رأس الأميرة. يعلم بين أنه سوف عليه إبعاد الملك في الحال!

4. **لَقَدْ سَرَّعَ جَمِيعُ عُرُفٍ حَضَرَ وَبَصُرَ وَرَأَى أَبْوَابَ وَالسِّتَائِرِ مِثْلَهَا وَأَخْرَجَ يَصْرُوحُ بِحَمْدِكَ عَمَّا عَسَى عَاءٌ وَصَرُوقٌ لَبِيبٌ، فَيَقُولُ الْمَلِكُ: "مَنْ بِاللَّابِ؟ النِّزْمُ أَهْدُوهُ، مَن عَصَا؟" أَسْتَمِيعُ حَمْدَهُ سَاخِرًا! بَيْتَرُ مَذْهُوْلٌ. عِنْدَمَا يَخْرُجُ الْمَلِكُ مِنَ الْحَقَامِ يَقُولُ لَهُ: "عَدُّ أَصْبَاحٍ سَوَادٌ دَلِيلًا فِي نَبْكِ اللُّوْحَةِ، وَبِمَ يَأْتِي أَحَدٌ لِيُنْظِفَ الْغُبَارَ عَنِّي أَبَدًا! لَقَدْ أَتَتْ الْغُبَارُ اللَّوْحَةَ، لَذَا كَانَ عَلَيَّ أَنْ أَسْتَحِمَّ."**

5. تَتَفَقَّهُ سِتْرَ وَلَكِنْ يُؤَمِّحُ لِلْمَلِكِ أَنَّ صَوْلَجَانَهُ عَلَى وَشِكِّ لِسْقُوطِ عَلَى الْأَمِيرَةِ! فَيَقُولُ
تَتَفَقَّهُ سِتْرَ بِتَلِي، سَوْفَ أَعُودُ مُسْرِعًا. وَلَكِنْ أَرْجُوكِ نَطْفَ اللُّوْحَاتِ الْمَوْحُودَةِ مَتَى
عَصَرَ تَتِ الْمُسْتَعْمِلِ، وَلَا سَوْفَ تَتَلَفُ اللُّوْحَاتِ لِلْأَبَدِ!، وَيَرْكُضُ عَائِدًا إِلَى اللُّوْحَةِ بِتُفْبِيكِ
الصَّوْلَجَانِ.

6. **بحيث** **نسر** **ش** **تتصف** **جميع** **اللوحات** **الموحودة** **في** **لفص** **حتى** **لا** **تتألف** - **وحتى** **لا** **تضم**
أخذ **بني** **حارون** **من** **موحه** **لتنشج** **بشكل** **جيد**

You can use pictures in a story to help you understand new words. You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it. For example, is there an article (a/an/the) before the word, or an adjective? If there is, it's a noun. You can then look at the sentences around it and think what the noun could mean in the context.

ستطيع أن تستخدم الصور في قصة لتساعدك على أن تفهم الكلمات الجديدة. يمكنك أيضًا أن تنظر في الكلمات الموجودة حول كلمة غير معروفة في النص لتساعدك على فهمها. على سبيل المثال، هل هناك أداة تعريف (a/an/the) قبل الكلمة، أو صفة؟ إذا كانت كذلك، فهي اسم. يمكنك بعد ذلك أن تنظر في الجمل حول الكلمة وتفكر في معنى الكلمة في السياق.

Example on Lesson 3 Part (a)

1 Read and match "A" with "B":

- | A | B |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. Where does Peter live? | a) to pick up the scepter. |
| 2. The king is sitting on his throne | b) He lives in a big palace. |
| 3. The king runs back to the painting | c) It's old and no one lives there now. |
| 4. The rooms are full of | d) with a crown on his head. |
| 5. What is the palace like? | e) the scepter is leaning. |
| | f) interesting and precious things |

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. king - is - What - the - doing?

?

2. palace - a - lives - Peter - big - in.

3. Peter - Where - live - does?

?

4. wasn't - king - The - happy.

5. the - did - Why - king - the painting - leave?

6. like - dining - didn't - the - room - I.

7. see - He - crowns - and - can - scepters.

8. does - find - Where - king - the - Peter?

?

?

3 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. does peter notice something strange

2. yes we can go through these rooms

3. summer is my favorite season

4. d'd you see the moroccan king

5. ancient egyptians were so clever

6. do you like eating cookies

4 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A king I have read about"

Ideas to help you

- Who is that king?
- What country did he rule?
- When did he rule it?
- What did you know about him?
- What things did you like about him?



Lesson 3

Part 2

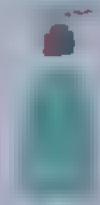
Main Vocabulary

Ancient Egyptian Traditions



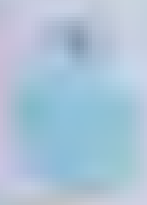
soap

صابون



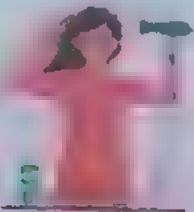
shampoo

شامبو



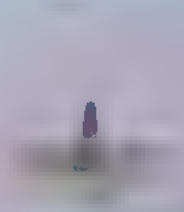
perfume

عطر



personal care

عناية شخصية



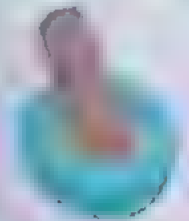
incense

حور



hairbrush

عرشاه شعر



mixture



toothpaste

معجون أسنان



toothbrush

عرشاه أسنان



products

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

common herbs

عشبات شائعة

powder

cheaper

أرخص

minerals

expensive

cone shape

led to

ingredients

mint candies

pine seeds

small pine

كحلل كحلل

كحلل كحلل

Personal care in the past

Regular verbs

Present

recommend	أوصى
mix	خلط
cover	أغشى

Past

recommended	أوصى
mixed	خلط
covered	أغشى

أوصى، خلط، أغشى

Present

cool	بازد	برزد
rub	يدك - يفرج	نطرت
tie	ربط	لغز

Irregular verbs

Present

stick	بالصق
keep	بقي
cut	بقطع - بقص

Past

stuck	بالصق
kept	بقي
cut	بقطع - بقص

أوصى، خلط، أغشى

Present

mean	أقصد - أرمي	أقصد
wear	ارتدى	ارتدى
know	عرف	عرف

Personal care in the past

Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt!

► Perfumes

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called kapot. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common herbs in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream. Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. In Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing these perfume cones on their heads at festivals!

► Toothpaste

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush made of wood or bone. The brush was made by sticking small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end. The ingredients of their toothpaste were a mint, rock salt, pepper, and dried mint leaves. They put this dry powder directly onto their teeth and rubbed it with their toothbrushes.

► Breath Mints

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made scented candles. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire until it cooled, and cut it into small square candies.

عن قديم المصريين كانوا يستخدمون نوع من فرشاة الأسنان مصنوعة من الخشب أو العظم.

المعطور

لتنظيف أسنانهم استخدموا نوع من المعجون الذي كان يخلط بين مسحوق الخشب أو العظم مع مسحوق البصل والملح والفلفل الأسود. وكانوا يمسحون به أسنانهم مباشرة.

للمحافظة على رائحة فمهم طرية طوال اليوم كانوا يصنعون حلوى صغيرة تشبه الشمع المصنوع من العسل والكمون والكمون المطبوخ والماء.

معجون الأسنان

للمحافظة على رائحة فمهم طرية طوال اليوم كانوا يصنعون حلوى صغيرة تشبه الشمع المصنوع من العسل والكمون والكمون المطبوخ والماء.

السعاح المعطر للفم

للمحافظة على رائحة فمهم طرية طوال اليوم كانوا يصنعون حلوى صغيرة تشبه الشمع المصنوع من العسل والكمون والكمون المطبوخ والماء.

Exercises

Lesson 3

3

1 Read and match A with B.

1. Many of the people in ancient Egypt

a) used flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals

2. The Ancient Egyptians

b) used sticks

3. The most popular toothpaste

c) was made from

4. Chopped, dried iris flowers

d) were used in Ancient Egypt

5. To keep their mouths fresh all day

e) called kapet

f) the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

stick – powder – teeth – incense – toothpaste

To clean their ¹

toothbrush. It's a ²

it at one end. The ingredients of their ³

salt, pepper, and dried iris flowers. They put this dry ⁴

directly onto their teeth and rubbed it with their toothbrushes.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mixture – mint – cool – heat – seeds

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made

¹ candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine

², and some nuts together with honey. Then they

heated the ³ over a fire, left it to ⁴

and cut it into small square candies.

4

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 Ancient in was famous perfume of Egypt



2 had perfume cheaper prices a lot than in



3 Do - like - you - perfumes - using?



4 perfumes Egyptians strong loved The Ancient



5 The Ancient made Egyptians candies mint



5

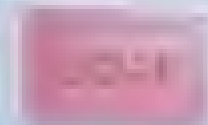
Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"My personal care tools"

How to help you

soap - shampoo - perfume - hairbrush -
toothpaste - toothbrush

Blank area for writing the text.



Lessons 4/5

Main Vocabulary الكلمات الأساسية في الدرس



flavors

نكهات

packaged spices

بهارات مُعبأة (مُغلّفة)

recipe

وصفة

souvenirs

هدايا تذكارية

Salt dough recipe

salt dough model

نموذج عجينة الملح

ingredients

مكوّنات

mixture

خليط - مزيج

bowl

سلطانية - وعاء - إناء

baking tray

صينية خبز

oven

فرن

low temperature

درجة حراره منخفضة

preparation time

وقت التحضير

hard

صلب

items

عناصر

plain flour

دقيق طامي

method

طريقه

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

combination

مزيج - خليط

famous for

مشهور بـ

medicine

دواء

spice stores

محلات البهارات

delicious dishes

أطباق لذيذة - أكلات لذيذة

to color cloth

تلوين الملابس

beautifully packaged

مُغلّفة - مُعبّأة بشكل جميل

flat surface

أسطح مسطّحة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
heat	دُفِن	heated	دُفِنَ	work	عَمِلَ
mix	خَلَطَ	mixed	خُلِطَ	roll flat	دَحَنَ
add	أَضَفَ	added	أُضِفَ	paint	رَسَمَ
start	بَدَأَ	started	بُدِئَ	bake	خَبَزَ
form	شَكَلَ	formed	شُكِلَ	stir	خَلَقَ

Salt dough recipe

1. Preparation time

10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

2. Ingredients

1 cup of plain flour (about 250g)

$\frac{1}{2}$ a cup of salt (about 125g)

$\frac{1}{2}$ a cup of water (about 125ml)

3. Method

1. Heat the oven on a low temperature.
2. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.
3. Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters or use the dough to make 3D objects.
4. Put your finished items on a baking tray and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard.
5. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.



1. وقت التحضير

10 دقائق + 3 ساعات للطبخ

2. المكونات

1 كوب دقيق صافي (حوالي 250 جرام)

$\frac{1}{2}$ كوب ملح (حوالي 125 جم)

$\frac{1}{2}$ كوب ماء (حوالي 125 مل)

3. الطريقة

1. سخّن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة.
2. اخلط الدقيق والملح في وعاء كبير. أضف القليل من الماء، ثم أضف قليلاً منه مرة أخرى، وقلب المزيج حتى يبدأ في تكوين كرة.
3. ضع كرة العجين على سطح مستو، وسكّلها بالشكل الذي تريده. يمكنك فرداًها وتقطيع أشكال أو أرقام أو حروف منها، أو استخدم العجينة لعمل أشياء ثلاثية الأبعاد.
4. ضع العناصر النهائية على صينية خبز وأدخلها الفرن لمدة 3 ساعات حتى تصبح صلبة.
5. اترك العناصر لتبرد، ثم قم بتلوينها.

Tip!

When we write instructions for the steps in a process, we often number them. This shows the reader that they have to do the steps in order to complete the process correctly.

عندما نكتب التعليمات للخطوات في عملية ما، غالباً ما نرقم الخطوات. هذا يوضح للقارئ أنهم يجب أن يفعلوا الخطوات بالترتيب لإكمال العملية بشكل صحيح.

Flavors!

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, besides delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume and medicine, and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs, and are beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.





Spices are used in many different ways. Some are used to flavor food, while others are used to make medicine. Spices are also used to make perfumes and soaps. In many cultures, spices are considered to be a gift from the gods. They are also used to make incense and to purify the air. Spices are an important part of many religions and cultures. They are also used to make natural dyes and pigments. Spices are a valuable resource and are often traded between different regions. They are also used to make natural preservatives for food. Spices are a part of our daily lives and are used in many different ways.

Exercises on Lesson 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

combinations – spices – recipes – restaurants – ingredient

Egypt is famous for its (1) that are used in home cooking and (2) all across the country. Special (3) of different spices are a secret ingredient in many (4).

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

tourists – packaged – perfume – souvenirs – cloth

We can use spices to make (1) and medicine, and to color (2). They also make great (3), and are beautifully packaged for (4) visiting spice stores and souks.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. salt - want - make - doesn't - to - dough - He.

2. would - salt dough - you - with - make?

3. are - We - having - together - fun.

4. do - use - we - **What** - for - spices?

5. is - its - famous - for - spices - Egypt.

6. can - **We** - use - perfume - spices - make - to.

7. they - are - **What** - colors?

?

.

.

?

4 Read the following text and answer the questions below:

Ancient Egyptians liked to be clean – they sometimes had a bath four times a day! They washed in the Nile River, or in public bathhouses, and used essential oils and flower oils. Many of the bathhouses in Ancient Egypt were very special places, and some had two floors. On the first floor, people relaxed. On the second floor, they could choose from different kinds of baths, and there was sometimes even a place for exercise and a medical room!

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the underlined word 'clean' is (untidy - dirty - clear).
2. They sometimes had a bath (five - four - six) times a day.

B Answer these questions:

3. Where did the Ancient Egyptians wash? ►
4. What did they use when they had a bath? ►

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what s egypt famous for ►
2. he s working on fridays ►
3. no you re not coming with me ►
4. adel hazem qasem and mustafa are my best friends ►
5. does sama like all her school subjects ►
6. basim and karim are playing in the garden ►



Test 11 on Unit 6



خاص بالأزهر الشريف



(3Ms)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong (perfumes - deodorants - spices)
2. The most popular perfume was called (Powder - Stick - Kapet).
3. Kapet was (cheap - expensive - not expensive).

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box: (3Ms)

soap - hairbrush - perfumes - toothbrush

Mariam : Hi Salma. What are you doing?

Salma : Hi Mariam. I'm brushing my hair with a ①

Mariam : Do you always brush your teeth?

Salma : Yes, I always use a ② to clean my teeth.

Mariam : Good. You have lots of healthy habits, Salma.

Salma : Yes. I also wash my hands with water and ③ very often.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. We need some (soap - wax - herbs) to make candles.
2. The king lives in a an (apartment - palace - house).
3. How (many - much - often) books are there?
4. Injy doesn't have (some - a - any) money

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Fathi is a baker. He works in a bakery next to our house. It is very hot in the bakery. He sells bread to people after he puts it in bags. His wife

Seham is a nurse in Al Helal Hospital. Her work is to help doctors and look after sick people. All patients love her and she loves them. She always smiles at them. She also looks after her family.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "them" refers to the (patients - doctors - family).
2. Fatih sells (fruit - bags - bread)

B Answer these questions:

3. What does a nurse do?
4. Why do patients love Seham?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. lemons - many - need - we - **How** - do?
2. likes - **Sama** - tea - a lot of - her - milk - in.
3. lives - in - a - Palace - **Peter** - big - his parents - with.

6 Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

- farmers grow lots of different spices in egypt

7 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"Egyptian flavors"

Ideas to help you:

Egypt - famous - spices - cooking - ingredient - recipes - perfume -
medicine - buy - stores - souvenirs - tourists





Test 12 on Unit 6

نص الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

1. Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate (a little - a few - many - much) meat.
2. People often used (ducks - fruit - honey - cheese) with bread and cream to make cakes.
3. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit (foods - vegetables - jars - drinks).

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

1. Egypt is famous for its
2. We also use spices to color
3. Fresh spices are one of the favorite .. that tourists buy.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. We have (much - any - a little - a lot of) candles.
2. They made (mint - perfume - toothpaste - deodorant) candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.
3. Egypt is famous for its (spices - streets - souvenirs - tourists) that are used in home cooking.
4. How (many - much - often - old) coffee do you need? Only a little.

4 Read and match "A" with "B":

(5Ms)

A	B
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. We need wax 2. I need a toothbrush 3. The king has a long 4. How much oil do we need? 5. How many books are there? 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) to wash my face. b) There are 20 books. c) to brush my teeth. d) to make candles. e) scepter in his hand. f) We need 300 grams.

5) Read the text and answer the question.

The school is the place where students learn. So students have to follow their school rules. School teaches students how to be good people. Students learn how to be tidy and polite. They spend very interesting time in school. Also they can make friends there. Good school should be clean and tidy.

(10M)

A) Choose the correct answer:

1. Schools should be (dirty - untidy - tidy - ugly).

2. Students spend (interesting - boring - sad - unhappy) time at school.

B) Answer these questions:

3. What do students have to follow at school?

4. What does school teach students?

6) Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. into - mixture - pieces - Stir - the chocolate - the

(3M)

2. shampoo - a little - is - There.

3. oil - much - How - do - need - we?

7) Punctuate the following sentence:

?

● i enjoy this drink in egypt and morocco

(1M)

8) Write an email of (50) words to your British friend Bell:

(5M)

Tell him about the famous drinks you have in your country, how you prepare them, what you put in them, and when do you drink them. Your email address is ramy@yahoo.com. And your friend's email address is bell@school.net.

✖
📍
🔍

From :

To :

Subject :

Listening Scripts



Listening Connect (G)

Unit

Test

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife. We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest.

Question 1

Test

In a village, in the countryside, there lives a giant who has a wonderful garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local children come to play in the giant's garden.

Test

The community garden is a big green space on the roof of an apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. They grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the market, too!

Question 2

Unit

Test

The west court is the large open area where students spend time outside. There is playground and playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

Question 1

Test 4

The IT Building is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for the Information Technology lessons. We have several computers, as well as laptops and tablets which students can borrow.

Test 4

The Ahmed Zewail Building is the place where students study science. There are four science labs and two new laboratories. These laboratories have all the equipment which classes need to do experiments.

Unit 1

Test 5

Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. They can climb up the hill to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. There is a great view from there.

Test 6

When you arrive at the Carnival, you are suddenly in a world of fantasy and fun. It's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are many rides to try like the rollercoaster (if you're brave!) and theaters where you can watch shows and concerts. There are places to eat and shops, too.

Test 6

I am going to Aswan with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Aswan Carnival. I want to try the rollercoaster. I am sure you are brave.

Unit 7

Test 7

In Egypt, we usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.

Test 8

In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn.

Test 8

I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. I go running every morning in the park. My friend Aser is organizing a party at his house for the end of the exams.

Unit 8

Test 9

Today is Thursday. I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood.

Test 10

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He visited China in the 13th century. He wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called the travels of Marco Polo.

Connect 6:

Test

10

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style.

Unit

11

Test

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called Kaper. It was expensive.

Test

12

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats. There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey! People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

Test

12

Egypt is famous for its spices. We don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Fresh spices are one of the favorite souvenirs that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

Question

CONNECT 6

First Term

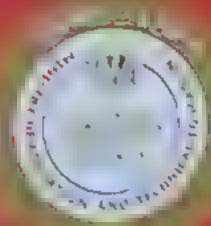
- Units Revision
- Revision Tests
- Answer Key

A

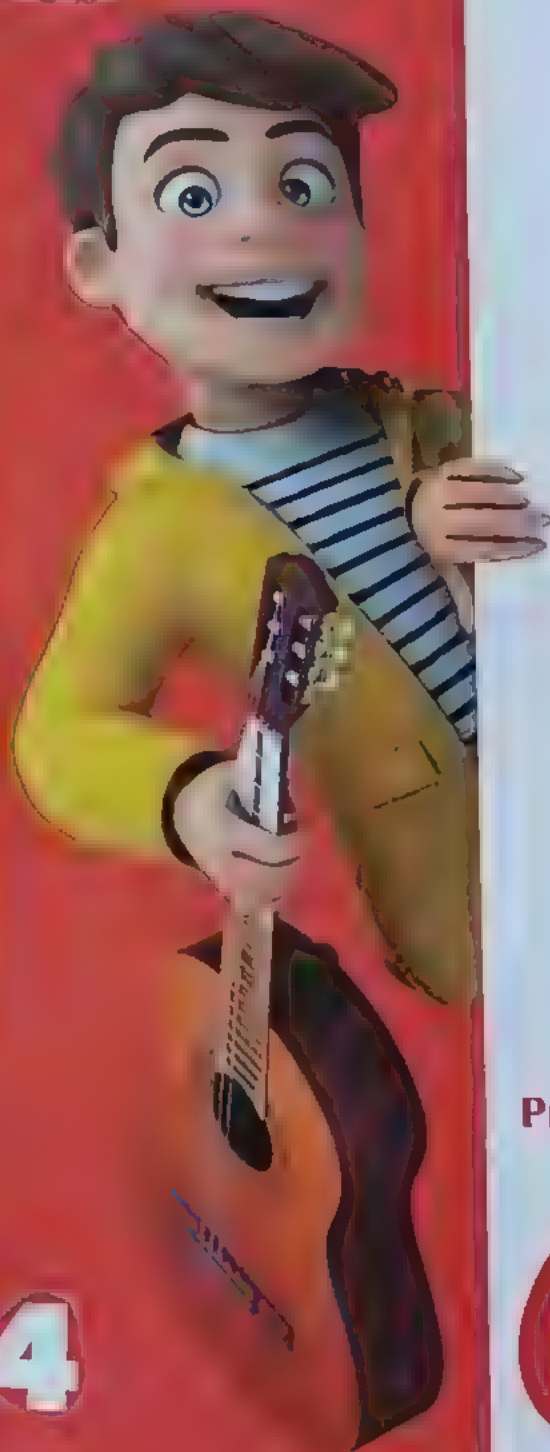
B

C

D



2024



Primary

6

Exercise 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

usually - city - theater - shopping - stay

I usually spend time with my friends. We often go to _____ in the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie _____ (2). My sister can drive, so she _____ (3) takes me in her car. And we always try to meet up for the holiday at Eid Al Adha, too. We usually _____ (4) for a week at their house then.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

performance - species - local - hang - railway

Years ago, the Park Lane was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some _____ (1) residents then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with more than 500 _____ (2) of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 km long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater _____ (3), eat delicious food, or go running, or just _____ (4) out with your friends.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

play - brown - share - builds - silent

The scientist _____ (1) didn't want to share his garden, so he _____ (2) a big wall around it. _____ (3) saw a lion once, _____ (4) slowly, the green grass turns _____ (5) brown.

Revision



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

side - Castle - friends - apartment - view

Our ① is in the city center, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great ② over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting ③ so there's always something to see there. In the distance, we can see the famous Edinburgh ④ too!



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

miss - delicious - restaurants - taste - noisy

New York is very ① all the time. There are lots of different ② here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. I think the food tastes more ③ in Egypt. I ④ Egyptian food so much!



Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

often - kids - spend - Nile - countryside

Nadine : What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?

Gameela : I usually ① time with my sisters. We often go shopping in the city center. What about you?

Nadine : I usually stay at home and help my mom, but I sometimes visit my grandparents with my sister, In'v, and her ②

Gameela : Where do your grandparents live, Nadine?

Nadine : They live in the ③ on a farm. It's near a town called Asvat. Do you know it? It's on the River ④

Gameela : Yes, I know Asvat very well.



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. Do you want to come
2. I always help my aunt
3. Where is the community garden?
4. The people who work there
5. We only use natural fertilizer

- a) It's a big green space
- b) We never visit it all day
- c) In the middle of the city
- d) on Friday afternoons.
- e) to my house?
- f) are all volunteers.



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. Our apartment block is
2. The selfish giant doesn't
3. The lovely garden always
4. New York is very noisy,
5. He is too small

- a) makes the children happy.
- b) to climb up into the tree.
- c) new parks and green spaces.
- d) on the sixteenth floor.
- e) want to share his garden.
- f) but Alexandria is much quieter.



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. Roof gardens also help
2. What do you usually do on weekends?
3. New York has
4. Where do your grandparents live?
5. We rarely have enough volunteers,

- a) They live in the countryside on a farm.
- b) I miss our food so much.
- c) to help us with our projects.
- d) clean the air in the city.
- e) a lot of green spaces.
- f) I usually spend time with my sisters.

Read and match (1) with (2)

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. I like to go to the countryside on weekends. | a) I like to go to the city. |
| 2. Where do your parents live? | b) so she usually goes there. |
| 3. My sister can drive. | c) Yes, that sounds good. |
| 4. Do you want to go to the city or the countryside? | d) the countryside on weekends. |
| 5. They live in the city. | e) with my sister. |
| | f) so she usually goes there. |

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- visits - rarely - us - My - grandpa
▶ My grandpa visits us rarely.
- friends - always - his - to - Ahmed - is - good.
▶ Ahmed is always good to his friends.
- goes - sometimes - Akram - swimming.
▶ Akram goes swimming sometimes.
- do - club - the - often - you - How - go to?
▶ How often do you go to the club?
- he - goes - The - birds - garden - around - a week.
▶ The birds go around the garden a week.
- she - visits - grandma - a week - She - her.
▶ She visits her grandma a week.
- with - your - hang out - You - friends - can.
▶ You can hang out with your friends.
- trees - plant - always - We.
▶ We always plant trees.

Step Ahead

9. The – go – me – live – always
▶
10. Does – prefer – eaten – vegetable –
▶
11. I – go – The – are – people
▶
12. How – Alexandria – in?
▶
13. go – there – I – my – often – with
▶
14. Please – walk – can – the – You – through
▶
15. time – New York – very – all – noisy – is – the
▶
16. keeps – me – from – Tell – all – home
▶
17. to – theater – go – movie – We – to – sometimes
▶
18. my – spend – usually – time – sisters – I – with
▶
19. in countryside – a farm – in – They – on – live
▶
20. What – like – you – your neighborhood – about
▶

Punctuate the following sentences:

1. New York has a lot of green spaces
▶
2. I like Egyptian food so much
▶

3. your new dress sounds great maintain



4. how are things in alexandria



5. there are lots of restaurants in new york



6. what things does she miss about egypt



7. please write back soon



8. how are things with you



9. is ahmed good at planting trees



10. together



11. i don't know the names of chinese dishes



12. in a tall building



13. what's wael's favorite place in usa



Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. (carpenters - volunteers - mechanics) They don't take any money.

2. (miss - leave - come back) my home. I want to go back soon.

3. (garden - roof - block).

4. They usually (plant - grow - make) tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce on the farm.
5. (chemical - natural - organic) means we only use natural fertilizer - we never use chemicals.
6. Farmers (plant - harvest - grow) vegetables, then eat or sell them.
7. We (grow - make - do) crops to eat.
8. People buy and (sell - grow - make) things at the market.
9. They only use natural (oil - fertilizer - water). They never use chemicals.
10. Roof gardens help (clean - wash - sweep) the air in the city.
11. People who live in one neighborhood are local (foreigners - residents - tourists).
12. Our apartment is on the sixteenth (flour - flower - floor).
13. He is (sad - angry - selfish). He wants everything for himself.
14. They plant a lot of areas and make them (yellow - green - blue).
15. He got on the train at the (bus - railway - taxi) station.

GRAMMAR REVISION

14 Choose the correct answer:

1. He doesn't often (see - sees - saw) his friends at weekends.
2. How often do you (work - working - works) in the community garden?
3. Soha (never - doesn't - does) helps in the kitchen.
4. Ahmed (is always - always is - has always) good to his friends.
5. How (often - old - many) does she visit her grandma?
6. She visits her grandpa (two - twice - one) a week.
7. Amr (rarely - always - often) plays football. He doesn't like sports.
8. Nadine's grandparents (live - lives - living) in Cairo.

9. How does she (gets - got - get) her tea from school?
10. What does she (do - does - do) at 11 A. Aft.
11. What (is - are - is) Mary's plans for the weekend?
12. She (has - have - has) a gymnastics lesson on Monday.
13. There (is - are - is) a big gymnastics competition this year.
14. Dates (have - had - has) a lot of sugar in them.
15. She (has usually - usually has - usually does) cheese for breakfast.
16. I (sometimes play - play sometimes - sometim) tennis at the weekend.
17. Donia and Wael (never are - are never - don't) late for school.
18. I don't like chicken. I (can't - never - can't) eat it.
19. I (go - goes - go) to work every day.
20. She (prepares - prepare - prepares) her exam.
21. He (goes - go - go) to bed late.
22. She (studies - study - study always - study) after class.
23. We (go often - often go - go often) shopping in the city center.
24. Our teacher (never give - gives never - never give) us homework on weekends.

15 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A day you spent with your friends"

park - bus - enjoy - play - eat - drink - home - tired - happy



Step Ahead

Unit 1

Unit 1: Mini Forests

Total

30

(3Ms)

Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. Mini Forest is an organization which (plans - builds - grows) small areas of forest in the city center.
2. Mini Forests (are - help - make) people enjoy (to do - to go - to see) the city.
3. Mini Forests (are - help - make) our (wildlife - neighborhood - gardens) like plants, animals and other living things.

Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

1. We can (get - buy - grow) twenty kilos of vegetables a year.
2. (Our - Their - His) gardens also help clean the air in the city.
3. Rooftop gardens are a great place to meet people and (my - your - his) friends.

Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. He (never - didn't - doesn't - don't) goes to work at night.
2. Like boxing, I (watch usually - usually watch - usually watch - watch usually) it on TV.
3. When you (are generous - active - selfish - helpful), good things happen.
4. They plant trees and they carefully look (for - up - after - like) them until they become a small forest.

Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

1. We always work hard to

a) plants in our projects.

2. We want to grow more

b) to make the old railway into a big, long park.

3. The selfish giant doesn't

c) shopping in the city center.

4. Some local scientists decided

d) find the best urban locations for our forests.

5. We often go

e) want to share his garden.

f) of different kinds of plants and animals.

Connect &

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Uncle Fathi was born in Tanta in 1985. He moved to Alexandria in 2007. He has been living there since then. He works in a big school. He has been teaching English since he was twenty three years old. He helps his students and sometimes takes them to the computer lab to make his lesson interesting. He is married and has two sons and a daughter. In his free time, he reads useful stories to his children.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "there" refers to (Tanta - Alexandria - school - village)
2. Uncle Fathi has (one - two - three - four) children.

7 Answer these questions:

3. How old is uncle Fathi? ▶
4. What does uncle Fathi do in his free time? ▶

8 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. usually - His - beautiful - is - garden. ▶
2. sports - use - the - park - People - for. ▶
3. tall - the garden - are - There - in - trees. ▶

9 Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

o what dish does amr like to have on friday ▶

10 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Fady:

(5Ms)

Tell him about your home, house or apartment, what you like about it and about your neighborhood. Your email address is selim@hotmail.com and your friend's email is fady@outlook.com

From

To

Subject

READING



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

takes - who - which - boring - where

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series (1) _____ popular with people of all age groups. It is interesting because it (2) _____ place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world (3) _____ humans live because the Earth is now too hot. The series (4) _____ the story of a boy called Frey (4) _____ wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring.



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

touch - friendly - pets - fur - teeth - claws

Cats are my favorite animals (1) _____ that they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft (1) _____ which is nice to (2) _____ touch. They are clean and calm animals, which are easy (3) _____ to look after. It is true that cats have sharp (4) _____ and teeth but they use them when they are scared.



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

buildings - find - modern - map - proud

Welcome to El Estero de San Juan, a beautiful area (1) _____ of. We are proud of our (2) _____ and we are happy to show the (3) _____ to (4) _____ and (5) _____ them for (6) _____.





Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

noise - hungry - stomach - Hares - carrots

It's a sunny day and Hare is in the garden. Suddenly her (1) makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the (2) in her kitchen. She's hungry! Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her room she stops. What is that (3)? Something is moving inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asked Hare. "No, where you are!" says a loud voice. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you (4) are my favorite food."



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

calculate - measurements - paint - wall - classroom

Hatem's (1) wall needs painting. The class (2) how much (3) they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the (4). Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.



Read and match (A) with (B):

(A)

(B)

1. How does Hazem feel?
2. Welcome to
3. I have a lot of books
4. He is very clever and
5. When you feel nervous,

- a) try to be calm.
- b) in my room at home.
- c) he is good at math
- d) He feels a bit nervous.
- e) our school.
- f) are really organized.

Step Ahead



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. Students come here for
2. Cats are independent,
3. It's a sunny day,
4. Cats are beautiful with soft fur
5. What is

- a) which is nice to touch
- b) and Hare lies in the grass.
- c) that noise?
- d) when they are scared
- e) their information technology lessons.
- f) so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. There are four classrooms and
2. Friendly means
3. Mustafa is very polite.
4. I'm excited to see
5. This is the building

- a) He shows respect to everyone.
- b) where you can find our computer classrooms.
- c) a fantasy TV series.
- d) helps in the garden.
- e) two new laboratories.
- f) nice to others, helpful.



Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. yet – books – Do – have – all your – you?

?

2. the – library – keep – We – in – calm – all.

3. does – Karima – How – feel – today?

?

1. I am a student at this school.



2. I am a student at this school.



3. I am a student at this school.



4. I am a student at this school.



5. I am a student at this school.



6. We are the best at this school.



7. I am a student at this school.



8. I am a student at this school.



9. I am a student at this school.



10. I am a student at this school.



11. I am a student at this school.



12. I am a student at this school.



13. I am a student at this school.



14. I am a student at this school.



15. I am a student at this school.



16. I am a student at this school.



17. I am a student at this school.



18. I am a student at this school.



19. I am a student at this school.



20. I am a student at this school.



21. I am a student at this school.

10

Punctuate the following sentences:

1. welcome to our school hazem
2. do you have all your books yet ahmed
3. you're really organized basel

16

Step Ahead

4. I love english and arabic
▶
5. I love the story of hare
▶
6. no we don t need to get up early on saturdays
▶
7. lions are not friendly animals
▶
8. amira and huda are going to school next monday
▶
9. cairo is the capital of egypt
▶
10. hello my name is hassan ali
▶

11 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. Come on, I'll (give - share - show) you where the science classroom is.
2. I'm a bit (noisy - organized - messy). I am not sure which textbooks I already have.
3. He's very (lazy - clever - calm), so he is good at math.
4. It's my first day at school and I (feel - have - eat) a bit nervous and shy.
5. Wow! You're really (messy - noisy - organized). I want to be like you.
6. Cats are (independent - noisy - naughty), so you don't need to take them for a walk every day.
7. (Polite - Nervous - Messy) people always show respect to others.
8. Sara is very (messy - friendly - shy). She likes talking to people.
9. These laboratories have all the (equipment - students - teachers) that classes need to do the experiments.
10. Please study the (map - book - notebook) and find out where the main buildings are.
11. Bees are insects which make (butter - honey - milk).
12. Hatem's classroom walls need (writing - painting - drawing).

13. Cats have soft (eyes - fur - teeth) which is nice to touch.
 14. For as everybody knows, elephants are (afraid - shy - polite) of mice.
 15. Cats are the best (birds - insects - pets) for my brother.

GRAMMAR REVISION

12 Choose the correct answer:

1. Mr. Maged is the man (which - when - who) is always ready to help us.
2. The bank is the place (where - who - what) we keep our money.
3. We always like people (which - who - when) tell the truth.
4. This is the house (what - where - who) Habiba lives.
5. The teacher punished the students (when - who - which) were shouting.
6. There was a princess (who - which - where) lived in a castle.
7. Thank you for the present (who - which - where) you sent me.
8. That is the town (where - when - who) he met his wife for the first time.
9. A school is a place (which - who - where) we can learn.
10. The Nile is the river (who - where - when) we go fishing.
11. Amr was very much (please - pleased - pleasing) with his idea.
12. It would be (interested - interesting - interest) to study about space and science.
13. It is not (surprise - surprised - surprising) that it is raining. It is very cold outside.
14. I was very (boring - tired - tiring), so I went to bed early.
15. His birthday party was (excited - exciting - excite).
16. This noise of the street is very (annoy - annoying - annoyed).
17. The film I watched was very (tired - bored - boring).
18. The new sport he is practicing is (bored - tiring - tired).
19. He is very (boring - tiring - tired) when he finishes doing that sport.
20. Kholud was (excite - excited - exciting) about going to the cinema.
21. I like most types of fruit, (and - or - but) I don't like pears.
22. My new school is great, (or - but - and) it's far from my house.
23. We want to go to the beach, (but - and - or) it's raining today.

13

Write an email of (50) words to your friend Hend:

Tell her about your family. Write about your parents, your brothers and your sisters and what each one does daily. Your email address is nancy@hotmail.com and your friend's email address is hend@yahoo.com

From _____

To _____

Subject _____

Unit 2 Test 2

Total
30

نص الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1

Listen and choose the correct answer:



(3Ms)

1. Hatem's classroom wall needs (building - painting - mending - fixing).
2. The class (write - think - count - calculate) how much paint they need to paint the wall.
3. They (build - paint - measure - pulls) the wall and write down the measurements.

2

Listen and complete the sentences:



(3Ms)

1. Wandaland is a fantasy TV
2. It's because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda.
3. This is a where humans live because the Earth is now too hot.



Choose the correct answer:

1. (Calm - Friendly - Shy - Clever) means people, quiet.
2. The recess which started at 5.39 is (5:40 - 6.00 - 6.00 - 5.50).
3. The boy whom we saw (who) is playing tennis is my son.
4. I hate shopping. It is a very (interesting - boring - interested - tired) activity.



Read and match (A) with (B):

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Why does Hassan feel nervous? | a) to sit on under the trees. |
| 2. There is a ... | b) ... and funny. |
| 3. Which school subject do you like most? | c) ... |
| 4. My friend ... | d) ... in the classroom. |
| 5. Who is in Hani's house? | e) Because it's his first day at school today. |
| | f) Physical education. |



Read the text and answer the questions:

Aunt Laila has got two children. Shady is nine years old and his sister Dina is four. Shady always plays with his sister while his mother is cooking, washing or cleaning. He is always nice to his small sister. One Friday morning, the two children were playing in their bedroom. While their mother was cooking in the kitchen, Dina suddenly began to cry and ran to the kitchen to her mother. Aunt Laila asked her, "Why are you crying, Dina?" Shady has broken my doll." Dina answered, crying more loudly. "How did he break it?" her mother asked. Dina stopped crying and said "It broke when I hit him on his head with it."



Choose the correct answer:

1. Shady is (four - five - nine) years older than his sister.
2. Dina is the writer's (aunt - cousin - sister).

Q Answer these questions:

3. How does aunt Laila do her work at home?

4. Who broke the doll? How?

Q Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. you - to - my - Do - want - see - school?

?

2. year - go - a - once - We - Alexandria - to

3. pet - write - Does - about - favorite - her - Oia?

Q Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

o who is going to travel to aswan

Q Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)

"Why you like your pet"

► Ideas to help you:

► Describe your pet.

► Say what you do with it every day.

► Say how you look after it.

► Why do you like it?



Revision on Unit 4

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

book - helmet - tour - biking - trip

I found some information online about quad (1) the desert. You have to wear a (2) if you ride a quad bike. One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. We can (3) the tour at the office in town. If we book the (4) today, it's cheaper. We got a 10% discount.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

characters - action - background - details - understand

Pictures can help you (1) what a story is about and give you extra (2). For example, the (3) can show you where the (4) happens, and the faces of the characters can tell you how they feel at that moment.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

exciting - fantasy - theme park - theaters - rides

When you arrive at the theme park, you are suddenly in a (1) world - it's really (2). There's a lot to see and do here. There are amazing (3) to try like the rollercoaster, and (4) where you can watch shows.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

at - on - get up - homework - library

Hi. I'm Nader. I (1) with my sister (2) to the (3) sports (4) at (5) on (6) get up (7) homework (8) library (9) breakfast (10) I don't go (11) I play (12) they



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. The door is not working with the freezer.
2. Study for about 30 minutes.
3. Can we use a pencil
4. Please turn the music down
5. What does this word mean, Sherif?

- a) but no longer
- b) It's too loud
- c) I don't know. Look it up in a dictionary
- d) you don't get message from them.
- e) It's not working
- f) in the test?



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. We book the tour today.
2. It's better to study
3. If you don't close the door of the freezer properly,
4. When you study hard,
5. When you buy two T-shirts,

- a) it doesn't work
- b) you get good grades.
- c) you get one free.
- d) it's cheaper
- e) the clouds are red.
- f) at the same time each day.



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. I'm with my family for my birthday
2. You can ask your father
3. Let's go to the theme
4. We can visit
5. We can go quad

- a) park and ride on a rollercoaster!
- b) we are all very friendly.
- c) biking in the desert in Giza.
- d) surprise at the Carnival!
- e) if you want any help with your homework.
- f) the Manial Palace Museum first.

8

Read and match (A) with (B):

1. The tour guide will
2. What time will
3. You have to wear a helmet
4. I need my credit card
5. Which two cities do the boys mention?

- a) Cairo and Giza.
- b) to pay for the tickets.
- c) wearing helmets.
- d) he meet us?
- e) if you ride a quad bike.
- f) meet us at the hotel.

9

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. the forest – through – Deer – Little – runs.
▶
2. Bab Zuweila – the girls – do – What – at – do?
▶ ?
3. Sunday – on – like – What – the – is – weather?
▶ ?
4. Monday – on – the souks – explore – we – Should?
▶ ?
5. my – family – time – I – my – a lot – enjoy – with.
▶
6. Museum – the – to – go – Manial – Let's – Palace.
▶
7. vacation – really – am – our – about – I – excited.
▶
8. We – Cairo – to – travel – can.
▶
9. our – this week – about – I'm – vacation – excited.
▶
10. beautiful – the top – from – view – The – is.
▶

11. Sundays – often – up – late – on – I – get.
▶
12. quad – can – desert – We – biking – in – the – go.
▶
13. will – Where – guide – the – us – meet?
▶
14. do – we – can – else – What?
▶
15. What – get – we – do – back – time?
▶
16. will – guide – meet – The tour – us – the hotel – at.
▶
17. helmets – wearing – is – Everyone.
▶
18. need – I – my credit card – pay for – to – the tickets.
▶

?

?

?

10 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. we celebrate sham el-nessim in spring
▶
2. my english always gets better if i practice it
▶
3. how can we get to giza if we miss the bus
▶
4. how does a rollercoaster work
▶
5. they went on a trip to the red sea
▶
6. i m having a party next thursday
▶
7. let s go to alexandria in august
▶



8. are there any (more - less - none) more?

9. my brother doesn't like carnivals

10. there are many buses from Luxor to Aswan

11 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. Let's go to the carnival and (choose - take - run) on a roller coaster
2. When you have regular breaks, you (concentrate - forget - think) more
3. We (need - create - do) 'Shant El Helwan' in spring
4. Great news! We are (doing - having - having) a party on my birthday
5. If we book now, we're sure to (buy - get - sell) seats.
6. We can (draw - take - paint) photos at the Mameluk Palace Museum for my school project.
7. The tablet (jumps - turns - switches off) if you press this button
8. Fatma is afraid of (width - length - heights). She doesn't want to climb up
9. In the evening, we can watch the (sunrise - sunset - sunshine).
10. Let's (plan - think - make) some activities for the trip
11. People's brains (work - forget - visit) better if they have a regular routine
12. Dad and I want to go to the simulation (see - theater - river) to see the show.
13. I don't want to (walk - climb - ride) that high mountain
14. My father felt (proud - angry - worried) when I got high marks

GRAMMAR REVISION

12 Choose the correct answer:

1. If you press the button, the tablet (will be - will be - switches) off.
2. Does your aunt always make a cake when you (are - are visiting - visit) her?
3. If he (haven't - doesn't have - has) enough money, he can't buy that expensive car.
4. We can't go to Alexandria if we (missed - miss - misses) the train.

Step Ahead

5. If it rains, I always (takes - will take - take) an umbrella.
6. When the weather is nice, I (go - would go - goes) to the park.
7. If we (hurry - don't hurry - aren't hurry), we'll miss the train.
8. They (would visit - can visit - visit) us when they come to Cairo.
9. If you don't know the answer, (ask - will ask - can ask) your teacher.
10. My sister's birthday is (at - on - in) March.
11. We will meet our friends (at - in - on) lunchtime.
12. My wedding will be (on - at - in) April 6th.
13. We will visit our grandpa (in - at - on) the weekend.
14. I don't get up early (in - at - on) Fridays.
15. I usually go to bed (at - on - in) 10 o'clock.

13 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A week you spent in Sharm El-Sheikh"

nice - beaches - tourists - diving - coral reefs
- sun - fresh air



Unit 3 Test 3

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

1. If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can (play - read - go - remember) better in the afternoon.
2. It's helpful if you (give - write - take - help) down a list of what you want to do each time you study.
3. You can (dive - drive - check - leave) the point you finish off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!

Connect 6



Listen and complete the sentences:

1. Fatima is very
2. The girls reach the top after a long
3. Amal told Fatima to breathe

(4Ms)



Choose the correct answer:

1. If you find my keys, please (to call - call) this number
2. They went on a trip to the North Coast (to go - in) July.
3. When you feel tired, you (can go - could go - would go - goes) to bed early.
4. Sharm El-Sheikh is a (busy - empty - dirty - polluted) city by the Red Sea. Lots of people go there every year.

(5Ms)



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. Why don't we try new places?

Little Deer goes to the lake

3. When do we get up on school days?

We can see a view at the park.

5. When was the last time you faced something you feared?

a) I get up at 7 o'clock.

b) I go to the bathroom!

c) I enjoy my birthday

d) You can see a view

e) and has a drink

f) you are suddenly in a world of fantasy.



Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Every winter, thousands of people from every part of Europe, America and Asia come to spend their holidays in our great country, Egypt. They are tourists who come to enjoy the fine weather and sunshine of Egypt when it is very cold in their countries. They like to visit Luxor and Aswan. They like to see the ancient treasures of Egypt, so they like to visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. Before they return home, they like to go to Khan El-Khalil to buy some souvenirs.

Choose the correct answer:

1. ... (...)
2. ... (...)

ents - all over the world)

Answer these questions::

3. ... do tourists come to Egypt?
4. ... do tourists buy at Khan El Khalili?

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. ... - Wednesday - Tamer - go - Should - quad - on? ?
2. park - do - Why - you - the - like? ?
3. she - can - up - climb - How - the hill? ?

Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

When mona goes to bed late she s tired

Write an email of (50) words to your friend Farid:

(5Ms)

Tell him about an article you read in a newspaper on "How we can study well". Tell him about the different ways to concentrate and how we can save time. Your email address is maged@gmail.com and your friend's email is farid@yahoo.com.

From

To

Subject

Unit 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cycling - worry - running - exams - free

I'm studying hard for my (1) _____ at the moment. But I don't
worry about spending all my time studying. I know it's important
to get outside and do some exercise, too, so I go (2) _____ every
morning in the park. I'm also (3) _____ on the weekends with my
dad. Riding bikes is fun.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

birthday - food - countries - noodles - life

Some (1) _____ have different birthday food. In China,
people like to eat long (2) _____ or peaches on their
(3) _____. Why? Because they think that these can give
you a long (4) _____.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

local - organizing - celebration - inviting - invite

Hi Maha. I am writing to (1) _____ you to our school's Mother's
Day (2) _____ this year. We are (3) _____ a special
day for the event on Sunday March 21 (details below). As well as students and
teachers, we are inviting people from the (4) _____ community
who often help our school. We very much hope you can attend.

Step Ahead

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Amr has a very nice playlist on his mobile. 2. Give me the scissors 3. I'm hanging up the 4. Guests are people who 5. They're decorating | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) streamers for Hala's party. b) the birthday cake. c) people are coming. d) to cut the string. e) We can play it in the party. f) you invite to your home |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

5 Read and match (A) with (B):

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. We are inviting people from the local 2. Egyptian people often sing 3. What's the weather like in Aswan? 4. I love history books and 5. Amr is organizing a party | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) It's really hot there. b) community who often help our school. c) the documentary is good too. d) at his house after the exams. e) songs at birthday parties. f) do this with one breath! |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

6 Read and match (A) with (B):

- | | |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In China, people like to eat 2. Birthdays are 3. What are 4. I'm writing to invite you 5. We have an amazing prize | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) your news? b) to our school's Mother's Day celebration. c) you reading? d) long noodles or peaches on their birthday. e) celebrated all over the world. f) for the best costume. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|



Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. the party – We – you – hope – attend – can. ?
2. coming – are – people – many – How? ?
3. Can – balloons – you – up – some – blow? ?
4. please – phone, – I – your – Can – borrow? ?
5. the party – the cake – you – for – Will – bake? ?
6. are – playing – They – with – the balloons – football. ?
7. an armchair – reading – Amira – in – is – a book. ?
8. me – the glue, – can – pass – please – you? ?
9. a special day – the event – are – We – for – organizing. ?
10. for – party – birthday – the – is – Who? ?



Punctuate the following sentences:

1. do you often go to birthday parties
2. what are you doing youssef
3. we can ask adel to make a playlist
4. i don t like chocolate cake
5. mr yousry is blowing up the balloon
6. we are practicing for the football game on sunday

7. will you feed the cat please
▶
8. we don't know how to make a cake
▶
9. yes marwa bought a new car
▶
10. no I don't think heba will come
▶



Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. My parents usually go to our school's Mother's Day (information - celebration - decoration)
2. Children like to (hang up - blow out - let off) the candles on their birthday cakes
3. We are inviting people from the local (buildings - forest - community).
4. Children need an adult to (hang up - blow up - let off) the fireworks
5. The cook is (hanging - blowing - decorating) the birthday cake
6. I'm (hanging up - decorating - inviting) the streamers for my sister's birthday party
7. Are you (sending - decorating - hanging) the invitations?
8. Dalida is going to make a (fireworks - playlist - streamers) on her phone.
9. (CD - DVD - RSVP) means please reply
10. There's (at - about - on) 4 liters of water in total
11. (Adults - Babies - Kids) are fully grown people, not children
12. We always invite (guests - animals - birds) to birthday parties.
13. I like eating (noodles - traditions - countries).
14. We very much hope you can (come - attend - go) the party

GRAMMAR REVISION



Choose the correct answer:

1. I (is - are - am) not having fun with Ali.
2. (Is - Are - Am) Amr and his friends playing now?
3. Laila (enjoying - enjoy - enjoys) her time in London.
4. She's (wear - wears - wearing) a beautiful dress.

Revision

5. Where (am - are - is) Mona and her father staying?
6. Can you (give - bring - gives) me your mobile to call my mom?
7. Will you (bake - is baking - bakes) the cake for the party?
8. (Is - Are - Will) Noha and Hany trying to dance?
9. (Will - Are - Is) you lend me your pen?
10. I (am - am not - can't) studying these days. We are in summer vacation.
11. Why (is - are - am) your brother shouting?
12. She (can - is singing - sings) on the stage now.
13. Girls (is - are - will) helping their mother to make a cake.
14. Where (are - is - will) Selim and Osama playing football?
15. Look! They (practice - are practicing - practice) hard the next game.

11 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:
"Mother's Day Celebration"

- When we celebrate it
- What the celebration is for
- What present you buy for mom



Unit 4

Test 4

Total
30

هذا الامتحان موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

1. In your email you ask me what I'm (writing - doing - reading).
2. The book is taking (pages - ages - stages) because I'm a slow reader.
3. I love (story - history - study) books and the documentary is good, too.

Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

1. Children everywhere like food
2. Children like to light out the candles on their birthday cakes.
3. In India, the candles are left to burn

Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. If you don't blow out the candles they (burn - get bigger - turn on - decorate).
2. Amira! Are you (sending - spending - inviting - blowing) the invitations?
3. What (am - are - is - does) your brother reading now?
4. Is he (take - taking - takes - took) photos at the moment?

Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. How many liters of water 2. My dad is working in France 3. My mom always makes a 4. Egyptian people often sing 5. I'm working on | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) songs at birthday parties. b) from the clothes they are wearing. c) a new project. d) so we miss him. e) do you use when you take a shower? f) cake when it's my birthday. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Next Thursday, Mayar is going to have a birthday party. All her friends will come to the party. On Tuesday, Mayar and her mother will go to the shops to buy some foods for the party. They will buy lots of cakes and sweets. Mayar has got a book about games. She is reading the book and she will choose some games. It will be a nice party.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Mayar is reading a book about (sports - games - parties - music).
2. Mayar and her mother will go shopping on (Thursday - Tuesday - Friday - Saturday).

Answer these questions::

3. When is Mayar going to have a party?
4. Who will come to Mayar's party?

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. wall - classroom - a poster - Display - your - on.
2. addressed - invitation - the - is - Who - to?
3. an armchair - reading - Amira - a book - in - is

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

○ are there any special birthday traditions in egypt

8 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements: (5Ms)


"A present you received on your birthday"

► Ideas to help you:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| ► What present? | ► Who gave? |
| ► Why? | ► Your feeling. |



Revision on Unit 6

 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:


journey - island - port - weather - possible

It was a long, boring day with terrible ¹ . The ship
 can't leave the ² .
 The ³ wasn't good, so my journey to the mysterious
⁴ . I can see the ⁵ through my telescope. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm
 trees and there are green mountains at its land center.

 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dromedaries - village - water - caravan - dunes

The dromedaries in the ¹ moved slowly up and down
 the ² , swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went
 toward Lop Nur, the last ³ before the empty wasteland
 of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for
 thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no ⁴ .

 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

trip - felucca - sails - travel - skills

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A ¹
 is difficult to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the ²
 to do it. The ³ was amazing. We went slowly down
 the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white ⁴
 which moved gently in the wind. It was so quiet and peaceful – a lovely way
 to travel.



Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

favorite - diary - visiting - remember - vacation

Rana : What are you reading Engy?

Engy : Oh hi, Rana. It is my travel (1)
my family's (2)

I want to
in Croatia.

Rana : What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

Engy : I think it was (4)

Marco Polo museum.



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. Who was Marco Polo?
2. The journey was difficult.
3. He rode a camel
4. We had a delicious lunch
5. Sand dunes are like

- a) on board the felucca.
- b) to control or change
- c) It took years!
- d) huge, yellow waves.
- e) all the way to China.
- f) He was an Italian explorer.



Read and match (A) with (B):

1. What was your favorite
2. A team of archaeologists
3. The Nok people's culture
4. Clay is a type of earth
5. Almost 100 years ago,

- a) that's sticky when wet.
- b) to help create new ideas.
- c) thing about the vacation?
- d) there was a very surprising discovery.
- e) is still a mystery today.
- f) went to the area to find out more.

Step Ahead

7 Read and match (A) with (B):

1. I had quite a relaxing
2. The weather will be good
3. Today I had an amazing experience.
4. The bridge in the village
5. The weather was still bad

- a) I went on a felucca on the Nile.
- b) is damaged and dangerous.
- c) and there was heavy rain.
- d) to send his luggage to Japan.
- e) with no rain.
- f) sleep in my cabin last night.

8 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. the - Nile - on - River - went - I - on a felucca.
2. the captain - does - describe - how - she - of the boat? ?
3. pyramids - think of - the writer - What - the great - did? ?
4. stopped - things - to see - We - incredible - some.
5. leave - the sun - will - when - comes up - The ship.
6. the captain - news - good - was - from - There.
7. this place - very - in - seems - Time - slowly - to move.
8. for - long walks - went - the ship - around - I.
9. in the day - spend - his time - How - the writer - does? ?
10. island - explore - the mysterious - can - I.

Revision

9 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. how does the writer describe the island
▶
2. the water in the sea wasn't warm
▶
3. which egyptian animal does it look like
▶
4. nader and walid were in my class last year
▶
5. we had a great time at the carnival
▶
6. the nok people's tools were made of stone
▶
7. did uncle hazem travel to england last july
▶
8. yes that's true
▶
9. winters in egypt aren't very cold
▶
10. he went to china eight hundred years ago
▶

10 Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. Marco Polo went on a long (flight - voyage - drive) by sea.
2. He stopped and went (cross - pass - across) the desert.
3. He (drove - rode - flew) a camel to China.
4. The (inventor - explorer - worker) always wants to know new things about new places.
5. The Nok culture in Nigeria is still a (mystery - story - book) today. No one knows a lot about it.
6. Antarctica is a cold (city - continent - country).

7. (Axe - Tool - Clay) is a type of earth that is sticky when wet.
8. The sand dunes - dunes - dunes were like huge yellow waves.
9. This is a - the - my - my writer - (daily - dairy - diary).
10. I can fly my kite when there is wind - rain - lightning.
11. We had a mysterious - delicious - relaxing) lunch yesterday.
12. The traveler found a treasure - voyage - treasure) on an island. It was very expensive.
13. The place was (quit - quite - quiet) and peaceful.
14. The (inspiration - imagination - transportation) is an example others use to help create new ideas.
15. (Clay - Axes - Tools) are things we use to cut trees and wood.
16. When something is (advanced - ancient - old), it's far ahead in development.
17. When someone makes a an (experiment - inspiration - discovery), he finds something that people didn't know about.

GRAMMAR REVISION

11 Choose the correct answer:

1. We didn't (have - had - has) a vacation this year.
2. Where did you (found - founded - find) your book?
3. My mother (is - were - was) a clever student when she was young.
4. (Were - Was - Is) your friend here yesterday?
5. The plane (fly - was fly - flew) high in the sky.
6. I finished my homework and my father (reads - read - reading) a book.
7. Did Omar (catch - caught - catches) the bus last night?
8. My brothers (doesn't go - aren't go - didn't go) out.
9. What did Habiba (does - do - did) last week?
10. Did your sister (wins - won - win) the first prize?
11. Was - Did - Were) Saleh and his family at the club last Friday?

Revision

12. Did the thief (told - tell - tells) the truth?
 13. They (rode - rides - were ride) a camel all the way home
 14. How did people (got - get - gets) to India in those days?
 15. Marco Polo (sail - sailed - was sail) to Korcula by ship.
- 12** Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"An amazing journey"

→ Ideas to help you

where to - with whom - why amazing - spent
time - activities - see - souvenirs



Unit 5

Test 5

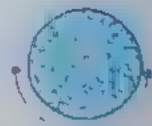
Total

30

لنما الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

1

Listen and choose the correct answer:



(3Ms)

1. A team of (vets - doctors - archaeologists) went to the area of Nok to find out more.
2. There were also iron and stone (sports - farming - sailing) tools.
3. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very (advanced - similar - around) culture.

2

Listen and complete the sentences:



(3Ms)

1. I had quite a relaxing sleep in my
2. This morning, I had breakfast with the others on the
3. In the afternoon, there was good news from the

last night.

Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. (Archaeologists - Farmers - Inventors - Farmers) are people who dig the ground to look for monuments.
2. The boat had two white sails. It was moved gently in the wind.
3. (Were - Did - Was - Is) your father afraid to swim when he was younger?
4. Did Ali (has - have - had - having) his dinner?

Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. They found sculptures of | a) It's my travel diary. |
| 2. What are you reading today? | b) the other name of the camels. |
| 3. The museum had a lot of | c) were beautiful clay sculptures. |
| 4. The dromedaries are | d) He didn't believe them. |
| 5. There were many strange legends about this desert | e) humans under the ground. |
| | f) objects from ancient China. |

Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

A poor farmer was working on his small farm. He slept under a tree and had a dream. He found a map in an old piece of cloth. It was showing where a treasure "gold and jewels" was hidden in the desert. He rode his donkey and went to the desert carrying tools to dig in the sand. He found the place and began to dig, and after half an hour, he found the box. He got it out and opened it. It was full of gold. He asked himself, "What would I do? What would I buy? A big house? A car or what?" Then he heard someone calling, "Wake up, wake up, your lunch is ready, poor husband," his wife said.

1. Choose the correct answer:

1.

2.

2. Answer these questions:

3. Who woke the farmer?



4. Did the farmer really find a treasure?



3. Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. does - What - desert - the - like - look?



2. the moment - at - am - hard - I - studying



3. Amr - the - What - the - desert - look?



4. Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

Only the best is the quality of a person's work.



5. Write an email of (50) words to your friend Amr:

(5Ms)

Tell him about your daily life and how you went to school. Your email address is amgad@gmail.com and your friend's email address is amr@outlook.com.

From

To

Subject

Revision on UNIT 6

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

roots - protects - shiny - healthy - oils

When you brush your hair, it **protects** the natural **oils** in your skin to keep your hair from the **roots** to the ends.

This **shiny** and **healthy** your hair from heat and dirt, and makes it look shiny and **healthy**.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Egypt - honey - dates - bees - drinks

There were a lot of **bees** in Ancient Egypt and that means there was **honey**. People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few **dates** or figs to make sweet fruit **drinks**.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cheap - expensive - perfumes - mint - herbs

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong **perfumes**. The most popular perfume was called kapet. It was **expensive** because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. But it also had a few common **herbs** in it, like rosemary and **mint** and spices like cardamom and cinnamon.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

jars - dried - spices - preserve - taste

Some families in Ancient Egypt knew how to use **spices** and herbs to make their cooking **taste** better, and they also knew how to **dried** food. For example, they dried fish and used salt to **preserve** it and used **jars** to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

5 Read and match (A) with (B):

1. To clean their teeth.
2. To keep their mouths fresh all day.
3. Egypt is famous for its spices
4. We don't only use spices to cook food
5. What did some leaders

- a) that are used in home cooking and restaurants.
- b) in Ancient Egypt use kapt for
- c) the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies.
- d) when you were asleep
- e) we also use them in perfume and medicine.
- f) Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush.

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. eat - to - Egyptians - well - liked - Ancient.
2. the - need - lemons - for - We - a few - recipe.
3. my - like - a lot of - I - tea - milk - in.
4. spices - to - food - We - cook - use.
5. sold - stores - are - Spices - in.
6. Egypt - Tourists - when they - souvenirs - buy - visit.
7. pepper - in it - salt - had - Their toothpaste - and.
8. bowl - there - the - any - Is - butter - in?

9. The teacher asked the students to write a paragraph about their favorite food.

10. The teacher asked the students to write a paragraph about their favorite food.

Punctuate the following sentences:

1. There is a very big kitchen in the kitchen.
2. The ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes.
3. How did some leaders in ancient Egypt use kapet?
4. How much milk does he want in your coffee?
5. Mint tea is a traditional drink in north africa.
6. Do you always brush your teeth?
7. No, I am not going to brush my teeth.
8. Omar works in a bakery next to our house.

Choose the correct answer: Vocabulary

1. This recipe is (famous - well known - secret). No one knows it.
2. You should (press - squeeze - push) lemons to make lemon juice.
3. (Heat - Press - Squeeze) the wax to melt it.
4. Tourists buy (souvenirs - tickets - foods) to remember their visit to Egypt.
5. I always wash my hands with water and (shampoo - cream - soap).
6. Egypt is famous for its (spaces - species - spices) that are used for cooking.
7. Laila's perfume (smells - tastes - feels) nice.
8. Can you (pour - power) me a cup of tea, please?

9. He was very surprised to hear that she had married a man of her own age.
10. She was surprised to find that the book was so interesting.
11. She was surprised to find that the book was so interesting.
12. He was surprised to hear that she had married a man of her own age.

GRAMMAR REVISION

Choose the correct answer:

- How many people were there at the party?
- She's got a lot of money.
- Happy! We don't have (many - a few - not many).
- I need (a little - a few - many) more books.
- We need some (lemons - potatoes - apples) for the juice.
- There are a (little - many - few) and a lot of food.
- There are (some - a little - much) people at the beach.
- Would you like (some - a few - many, more) fish?
- Are there (many - a little - a lot) cars in the street?
- There is (many - a few - much) tea in the cup.
- There (are - is - was) some oranges on the plate.
- There (is - are - were) orange juice in the jar.
- There is (some - a few - many) cheese on the plate.
- There are (a lot - many - a few) of restaurants in this town.

Unit 6

Test 6

Total

30

نينا الاستماع موجودان آخر الكتاب.

Listen and choose the correct answer:

- Peter lives in a big (place - space - palace).
- His parents are the (gardeners - caretakers - guards).
- The rooms are closed and (serious - mysterious - previous).

(3Ms)



Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

1. Egypt is famous for its _____.
2. They are used in home cooking and _____ all across the country.
3. Special combinations of different spices _____ as a secret ingredient in many _____.



Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. Egypt is (famous - astonished - clever - organized) for its spices
2. Ancient Egyptians made (mint - papyrus - wood - perfume) candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.
3. There are some (honey - spices - juice - salt) in the jar.
4. There (isn't - aren't - weren't - wasn't) any milk in the fridge now.



Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

- | | |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Please hurry up | a) 450 grams of wax make? |
| 2. Can I have a little _____ | b) did you do yesterday? |
| 3. How many candles does _____ | c) some types of minerals. |
| 4. How much homework _____ | d) do you have? |
| 5. How many brothers and sisters _____ | e) we don't have a lot of time. |
| | f) sugar in my coffee, please? |



Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Goha used to go to the village market to sell donkeys. One day, on his way home with his donkeys, he felt tired. He decided to ride one of his donkeys. He counted the donkeys but there were only nine. He got off his donkey and counted them again. This time there were ten. He got back on his donkey and counted them once more. He was surprised. There were only nine. He decided to get off his donkey. He preferred to walk with ten donkeys rather than ride with nine.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Goha was on his way (to the market - to the barn - home - to the field).
2. At last Goha (walked - rode his donkey - slept - stopped).

Answer these questions::

3. How many donkeys were there with Goha?
▶
4. Why did he decide to ride one of his donkeys at first?
▶

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. yesterday - much homework - did - do - How - you? ?
2. Egyptians - their bodies - Ancient - of - care - took. .
3. Peter - Where - king - does - the - find? ?

Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

○ what did ancient egyptians use to take care of themselves ▶

Write an email of (50) words to your friend Selim:

(5Ms)

Tell him about your personal care routines and what you use for that. Your e-mail address is maged@gmail.com and your friend's e-mail address is selim@yahoo.com.

From

To

Subject

Revision Test 1

Total

30



Listen and choose the correct answer:



(3Ms)

1. Mini Forest is a/an (community - company - corporation - shop).
2. These special green areas help people enjoy (the city - people - cities - nature).
3. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the (worst - biggest - best - smallest) urban locations for our forest.



Listen and complete the sentences:



(3Ms)

1. When you see it from the air, the Nile valley is in the shape of a _____.
2. in the north, where the Nile _____ opens into the Delta, it is wide.
3. in the south, where it passes between desert _____, it is narrow.



Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. Mr Ahmed is such a (nervous - shy - helpful - messy) teacher. He always answers all of our extra questions.
2. My birthday is (in - on - at - from) August 1st.
3. How (many - much - old - often) sugar do you want in your cup?
4. There's a (way - road - street - railway) line near my house, but there aren't any trains using it now.



Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

- | | |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Does your garden produce vegetables? | a) can you help me? |
| 2. The weather is usually | b) of green spaces. |
| 3. I'm hanging up the streamers, | c) Yes, it did. |
| 4. Little Deer runs | d) sunny in Egypt in summer. |
| 5. New York has a lot | e) Yes, it does. |
| | f) through the forest. |



Read the text and answer the questions:

In the past, life was different. People were poor, and life was difficult, but they were happy. There was a metro. There were a lot of cars, but they were old. There were a lot of people to work. But there was a lot of time to play. They had to eat. Life was very easy and quiet. They had time to play. They had time to rest. They had to work and speak with each other. I think life in the past was better than life today.



Choose the correct answer:

1. Life was (easy - quiet - bad - noisy) in the past.
2. People were (poor - rich - happy - sad) in the past.



Answer these questions:

3. Where did people live in the past? ▶
4. Was there a metro in the past? ▶



Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. a lot of - buy - products - care - - personal ▶
2. to - Do - my house - - you - come - want to? ▶
3. like - fast - Ma - - food - eating - doesn't ▶



Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

o do you like reading books ▶



Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"How did Ancient Egyptians like to be clean?"

perfumes - toothbrush - toothpaste - clean
- wash

Listen and choose the correct answer: (3Ms)

1. Many of the (products - cars - bikes - planes) we use today for personal use were first used in Ancient Egypt.
2. The most popular (shampoo - toothpaste - perfume - deodorant) was called kapet.
3. Kapet was (cheap - expensive - dirty - not expensive).

Listen and complete the sentences: (3Ms)

1. Mazen is studying hard for his _____ at the moment.
2. Mazen is not spending all his free time with his nose in a _____.
3. Mazen goes _____ every morning in the park.

Choose the correct answer: (4Ms)

1. What did you (ate - - - -) yesterday?
2. Cats have (- - - -) claws and teeth. Don't make them angry.
3. She is (wears - wore - - - -) a white dress.
4. Omar is very (- - - - - - - - - -). He always helps people.

Read and match () with (): (5Ms)

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved _____
2. _____ oil do we need?
3. Packaged spices are one of the _____
4. _____ take you around _____
5. If you press the button, _____

- a) favorite souvenirs that tourists buy.
- b) the tablet switches off.
- c) No, we don't.
- d) strong perfumes.
- e) and stay with you at break.
- f) We just need 200 grams of oil.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

The weather in Egypt is usually sunny. But in summer it's very hot. So we usually go to Alexandria. In winter it's cold and it sometimes rains. We sometimes go to Luxor and Aswan in the winter. Like spring. The weather is windy and nice in the spring.

Choose the correct answer:

1. It's (hot - cold - windy - snowing) in the spring.
2. The weather in Egypt is usually (cloudy - stormy - snowy - sunny).

Answer these questions::

3. What's the weather like in the summer? ►
4. Is it wet in winter? ►

6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. not - a - person - nervous - is - Adel. ►
2. you - Can - me, - please - help? ►
3. does - find - Where - king - the - Peter? ►

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

o mohamed salah is a great footballer ►

8 Write an email of (50) words to your friend Omar:

(5Ms)

mer holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh. Tell him also about the places you visited what you did there, and who enjoyed the trip with you!

Your email address is mazen@school.net And your friend's email address is omar@hotmail.com.

From
To
Subject

Revision Test 3

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجودان اذ الكتاب



Listen and choose the correct answer:

(3Ms)

1. Cats are beautiful, with (thick - soft - hard - thin) fur.
2. Cats are (dirty - clean - noisy - stupid) animals.
3. They have sharp (noses - feet - claws - mouths) and teeth.



Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

1. In Egypt, we usually make birthday _____ for our children.
2. We put _____ on cakes to show the children's age on their birthdays.
3. The children usually get a _____, too.



Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. I go to the gym twice (some - a - any - the) week.
2. When someone finds something that people didn't know about, it's a/an (invention - discovery - inspiration - invitation).
3. You (rarely visits - rarely visit - visits rarely - rarely) your grandparents.
4. I can make a very nice (playlist - invitation - cake - streamers). We can play it in the party.



Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

1. What are you doing?

a) in the desert!

2. Adults are

b) are independent.

3. You can go quad biking

c) Cairo.

4. Let's climb the

d) fully grown people, not children.

5. Cats like people, but they

e) Bab Zuweila minaret.

f) I'm hanging up the streamers.

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Kamel is a farmer. He works hard in his field. When the sun rises, he goes to his field. He grows different kinds of fruit and vegetables. He hopes he will be able to buy a cart and a donkey to ride it to his field and back home. It takes him an hour to walk to his field. He is kind to everyone in his village. He has a son and a daughter. His wife helps him with his work.

6 Choose the correct answer:

1. He grows different kinds of fruit and (metal - gold - vegetables - sculptures)

2. Kamel goes to his work in the (morning - afternoon - evening - night).

7 Answer these questions:

3. What does Kamel hope? ▶

4. What does he grow? ▶

8 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. do - eat - cheese - you - How often? ▶

2. didn't - My dad - to - his work - go - yesterday. ▶

3. She - to - club - goes - the - sometimes ▶

9 Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

O no i don t like these toys ▶

10 Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"Having fun at the community garden"

plant - green spaces - neighborhood -
tomatoes - peppers - fresh food



Revision Test 4

Total

30

**Listen and choose the correct answer:**

(3Ms)

1. Marco Polo was a(n) (Egyptian - French - Italian - British) explorer.
2. Marco Polo was one of the first people from the West to visit (Egypt - France - India - China).
3. He went there in the 13th (century - day - year - decade).

**Listen and complete the sentences:**

(3Ms)

1. When you brush your hair, it spreads the natural _____ from your skin through your hair.
2. The natural oils _____ protects your hair from heat and _____.
3. The natural oils makes your hair look _____ and healthy.

**Choose the correct answer:**

(4Ms)

1. They are blowing up some (streamers - balloons - invitations - fireworks) for the party.
2. (Are - Am - Is - Do) they having fun in the garden?
3. We can ask Tamer to (send - make - hang - blow) a playlist.
4. We have (a little - a few - many - much) oranges. We can't make juice for everyone.

**Read and match (A) with (B):**

(5Ms)

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1. If we book the tour today | a) books on the table? |
| 2. Are there any | b) it's her mother's Mother's Day celebration. |
| 3. I have some perfume oil | c) it's cheaper |
| 4. My friend Name is Treacy and she | d) sing? |
| 5. I am writing to invite you to | e) Everyone loves her |
| | f) It smells lovely. |

Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

There is a new invention that helps people travel anywhere in a short time. The first plane was made in 1903. It wasn't as big as the planes we use today. Planes are faster than cars, buses and trains, but they are also the most expensive. Some people think that traveling by plane is not safe.

Choose the correct answer:

1. The first plane was (smaller - shorter) than the plane today.
2. Traveling by train is (cheaper - more expensive - faster - quieter) than traveling by plane.

Answer these questions:

3. When was the first plane made?
4. What do some people think of traveling by plane?

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. studying - for - exams - my - I'm - hard - at the moment.
2. English - my - school - favorite - subject - is.
3. tree - up - We - climb - this - can.

Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

Do you like reading books

Write an email of (50) words to your friend Amr:

(5Ms)

Tell him about a book you read about Marco Polo. Tell him also about the places Marco explored and some information you liked about Marco. Your email address is osama@school.net. And your friend's email address is amr@hotmail.com.

From

To

Subject

Revision

Total

10

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(4M)

1. The Ancient Egyptians took care of their eyes by using catfish.
2. The water of the (sea - canal - Nile) takes help from the flow of food and vegetables.
3. They grew onions, carrots, dates, apples, pears, bananas.

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

(4M)

1. Urban greening is an important part of environmental planning in many cities.
2. Urban greening means creating green spaces in cities.
3. Urban greening can help improve the relationship between the city and people's gardens.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(4M)

1. (How often - How much - How many - However) do you play football with your friends?
2. Let's (arrive - plan - climb - jump) to the top of the mountain.
3. Saad is a boy in my class (which - who - where - how) always get the full mark.
4. (Perfume - Cooking - Water - Wax) oil is used to cook rice.

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

(5M)

- | | |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Where does Salwa go to the city? | a) to the community |
| 2. How much wax is there? | b) to the city park |
| 3. Our apartment is in the city. | c) to the new home |
| 4. Please write back to me. | d) She's going to the cinema. |
| 5. We are inviting people to the club. | e) to the club |
| | f) 450 grams of wax. |



Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Last Friday, my family and I went to my uncle's farm. We went there by car. The weather was hot on that day, so we enjoyed our time there. Farmers were working hard to grow vegetables and fruit. Their sons were helping them with the work. I also enjoyed seeing the running water and the green land. The farmers welcomed us. They also helped each other.



Choose the correct answer:

1. The underlined word "there" refers to the (- farm - uncle - water).
2. The weather was (hot - cold - nice - bad) on that day.



Answer these questions::

3. What were the farmers' sons doing? ▶
4. What do farmers grow? ▶



Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. don't - I - like - candles - making. ▶
2. always - My sister - a healthy - breakfast - eats. ▶
3. There - many - are - in - cars - New York. ▶



Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

o which area of egypt produces the most wheat ▶



Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"A visit to the zoo"

last week - car - my family - lunch - animals
- fun



Step Ahead

Revision

Test 6

Total

30



Listen and choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. The club will work with local communities to plant and look after the ()
2. The project () from every forest we plant a
3. The group have enough () farmers - builders) to help



Listen and complete the sentences:

(3Ms)

1. The way you () gives other people information about your personality
2. Each person has a () way of moving
3. People who move in similar ways often become () and work well together



Choose the correct answer:

(4Ms)

1. (There is - There are - Are there - There is) any desks in your class?
2. The tourists (speak - doesn't speak - didn't speak - speaks) Italian. They spoke English.
3. I think the tools are in the (shed - shade - bed - gate) of the garden.
4. Cats have (soft - strong - hard - tough) fur which is nice to touch.



Read and match (A) with (B):

(5Ms)

- | | |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. There are | a) "the dry sea" in their language. |
| 2. I excited about our vacation | b) a few apples in the basket. |
| 3. I went on a felucca | c) a few apples in the basket. |
| 4. Is he eating seafood? | d) a few apples in the basket. |
| 5. Local people called the Gobi Desert | e) to Alexandria! |
| | f) a few apples in the basket. |



Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Coffee is the most favorite drink in many countries today. It is now grown in many parts of the world. Coffee grew first in Ethiopia. People discovered it there more than 1000 years ago. After that, Arab travelers took it to Egypt and other Arab countries. Then the people in Turkey learned about coffee. The first coffee shop in London was opened in 1652.



Choose the correct answer:

1. Coffee was first grown in (Ethiopia - coffee - the world - farmers)
2. People discovered it there more than one (hundred - thousand - million - century) years ago.



Answer these questions::

3. Where does coffee grow first? ▶
4. Who took coffee to Egypt? ▶



Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. palace - a - lives - Peter - big - in. ▶
2. Do - like - you - perfumes - using? ▶
3. works - dad - in - a - factory - My. ▶



Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

My friend Ahmad went on a trip ▶



Write an email of (50) words to your friend Nadia:

(5Ms)

Tell her about how you spend your weekends. Your email address is nadia@school.net. And your friend's email address is salma@hotmail.com

From
To
Subject

Step Ahead

Revision Test 7

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (1Mx3)

1. I'm with my (friends - cousins - family - sister) at the carnival.
2. There are amazing rides like the (orient train - roller coaster - carnival waterfalls).
3. There are places to (swim - eat - dance - sing) and stores, too.

2 Listen and complete the sentences: (1Mx3)

1. There is a _____ and a playing field in our school.
2. There are also benches to _____ on under the trees.
3. Children can also _____ plants with Mr Mahdi.

3 Choose the correct answer: (1Mx4)

1. My birthday party was (boring - bored - excited - exciting). Everyone enjoyed it a lot.
2. My family (go - went - goes - is going) on vacation last year.
3. He wants to go out with his friends, (and - so - because - but) he has a lot of homework.
4. Can you (make - hang up - let off - blow up) some balloons?

4 Read and match (A) with (B): (5Ms)

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. The new green spaces | a) of our school. |
| 2. There's a big park near the river | b) voyage by sea. |
| 3. Amal wants to see | c) I'm fine. |
| 4. Marco Polo went on a long | d) help people and animals. |
| 5. We are proud | e) all the famous places in Aswan. |
| | f) I often go there. |

Read the text and answer the questions:

(6Ms)

Many children love to go to the park. They play on the swings and slide. Some children go to the park on their own, but some go with their parents. In the park, there are many flowers and trees. Some children like to pick flowers, but some like to play on the grass. It is not good to pick flowers. We should keep the park clean and beautiful. We should not throw any trash in the park. It is not good. We should keep the park clean and beautiful. We should not throw any trash in the park.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Many children love to go to the (people - parks - children - flowers)
2. We should not throw any trash in the (grass - ground - park - bins)

Answer these questions::

3. Where do people live in the past?
4. Was there a metro in the past?

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

(3Ms)

1. the dentist - you - go to - How - do - often?
2. here - do - surprised - see - you - I'm!
3. in - uncle - a hospital - works - My.

Punctuate the following sentence:

(1M)

o he s going to aswan on thursday

Write a text of (50) words using the following elements:

"After-school activities"

do homework - watch TV - go to the club -
have dinner - go to bed



Unit 1

Test 1

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people to enjoy nature, and protect our wildlife like plants, animals and other living things.

Question 1

Test 1

From just one square meter of roof garden, we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great place to meet people and make friends.

Question 2

Unit 2

Listening Script

Test 2

Hatem's classroom wall needs painting. The class calculate how much paint they need to paint the wall. They measure the wall and write down the measurements. Then they look on the internet to see how many cans of paint they need.

Question 1

Test 2

Wandaland is a fantasy TV series which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it takes place in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world where humans live because the Earth is now too hot. The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to return to Earth to look for his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda boring.

Question 1

Unit 3

Listening Script

Test

If you eat a healthy meal at lunchtime, you can remember better in the afternoon. It's helpful if you write down a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can check it off the list when you finish studying and feel proud!

Question 1

Test

It is Tuesday and the girls are at Bab Zuweila. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."

Question 2

Unit 4

Listening Script

Test

In your last email you ask me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing Everything Ancient Egypt but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader! I'm enjoying it. I love history books - and the documentary is good, too.

Question 1

Test

Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn.

Question 2

Step Ahead

Unit 5

Listening Script

Test

A team of archaeologists went to the area of Nok to find out more. They found many similar sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very advanced culture from around 500 BCE to 200 CE.

Question 1

Test

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning, I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: he says that tomorrow the weather will be good with no wind.

Question 1

Unit 6

Listening Script

Test

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old and no one lives there now. A lot of the rooms are closed and mysterious.

Question 1

Test

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes.

Question 1

Listening Script

Revision 1

Listening Script

Test

Mini Forest is an initiative in the middle of our cities. It aims to help our wildlife and provide urban locations for our forests.

Such plants and animals in urban areas help people enjoy nature. But city planners and developers work hard to find the best ways to create green spaces.

Question 1

Test

When you see it from the air, the Nile looks like a giant's arm reaching north, where the Nile valley is. It is where it passes between the desert and the sea.

Question 2

Revision 2

Listening Script

Test

Many of the products we use today were first used in Ancient Egypt. The Ancient Egyptians used many perfumes. The most popular perfume was called khar. It was made from lotus flowers.

Question 3

Test

Hello everyone! I'm Mazen. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my time with my nose in a book! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise too, so I go running every morning in the park. I also play football with my friends with my dad.

Question 4

2



Step Ahead

Revision

Test

Cakes are often made for special occasions, such as birthdays and weddings. We usually make birthday cakes for our children to know their age. We often have parties for them. The children usually get a present, too.

Test

Birthday cakes are often made for special occasions, such as birthdays and weddings. We usually make birthday cakes for our children to know their age. We often have parties for them. The children usually get a present, too.

Revision

Test

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13th century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called The Travels of Marco Polo.

Test

When you brush your hair, it spreads the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and dirt and makes it look shiny and neat.

Revision 5

Listening Script 5

Test

The Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies and ate very well. They used a lot of garlic, lentils and other things.

08

Test

It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

Question 2

Revision 6

Listening Script 6

Test

We usually work with local communities to plant and look after the forests. We collect data from every forest we plant a few times a month. We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us.

Question 1

Test

The way you move gives other people information about your personality. Each person has a different way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting. People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

Question 2

Reading 2

Listening Script

Text

There are many things in our school. There is a playground and a play area. There are many trees and a water fountain. There is a teacher named Mr. Mand. He is the teacher who helps in the school.

Text

There are many things in our school. There is a playground and a play area. There are many trees and a water fountain. There is a teacher named Mr. Mand. He is the teacher who helps in the school.

The Set Book

Unit 1

Lesson (1)

1. Match the words with the pictures.
- garden
 - roof
 - apartment
 - neighborhood

2. Write the words in the correct order.
1. garden 2. roof 3. apartment 4. neighborhood

3. Choose the correct answer:
- 1- apartment 2- volunteers 3- roof
4- garden 5- neighbors 6- harvest
7- eat 8- neighborhood

4. Read and complete the text:
- 1- usually 2- often 3- How often
4- never 5- sometimes
6- rarely 7- never 8- often
9- sometimes 10- rarely
11- always 12- never 13- rarely goes
14- usually play 15- doesn't
16- How 17- know 18- play
19- don't 20- does
21- never goes 22- is never 23- eat
24- often 25- never rains 26- are always
27- often 28- usually visit
29- often takes 30- is rarely

5. Read the text and answer the questions.
- 1- How often does Mariam go on Fridays?

- 2- I always help my aunt on Fridays.
3- We grow vegetables to eat.
4- Do you want to come to my house?
5- We sell them in the market.
6- What things do you grow?

6. Punctuate the following sentences:
- 1 Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Fridays.

- 2- It's on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block.
3- We usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce.

- 4- Where does Mustafa go on Tuesdays?
5- Does your family have a garden?

7. Write an email of (50) words.

From: farida@hotmail.com

To: basma@gmail.com

Subject: Our community

Hi Basma!

I hope you're doing well. I wanted to share with you what we're doing in our community to make it cleaner and more beautiful. We the volunteers, plant vegetables like tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce in our Mini Forest garden. It's

amazing to see it grow and produce fresh food for everyone. Our neighborhood is now greener and healthier!
Lots of love
Farida

Lesson (2)

1. Read and complete the text:
- 1) organization 2) nature 3) wildlife 4) forest

2. Read the text and answer the questions:
- 1- forest 2- rarely
3- They work together to plant and look after the forests and plant over time.
4- They need more volunteers to join them.

3. Read and complete the dialogue:
- 1) cities 2) spaces 3) nature 4) volunteers

4. Choose the correct answer:
- 1- usually 2- often 3- How often
4- never 5- sometimes
6- rarely 7- never 8- often
9- sometimes 10- rarely
11- always 12- never 13- rarely goes
14- usually play 15- doesn't
16- How 17- know 18- play
19- don't 20- does
21- never goes 22- is never 23- eat
24- often 25- never rains 26- are always
27- often 28- usually visit
29- often takes 30- is rarely

5. Reorder the words:

- 1- I'm usually in bed before 10 pm
2- My dad always eats a healthy breakfast in the morning.
3- Donia and Wael are never late for school.
4- How often do you go to the dentist?
5- Our teacher sometimes gives us homework on weekends.
6- It rarely rains in the Western Desert.

Lesson (3)

1. Read and match (A) with (B):
- 1- c 2- f 3- b 4- e 5- d

2. Read and match (A) with (B):
- 1- c 2- e 3- b 4- a 5- d

3. Read and complete the text:
- spaces - create - famous - neighborhood

Step Ahead

1 Read and complete with "th" or "s"
need - sick - think / throw - thirsty - angry

2 Read the text and answer the questions:
1- trees 2- beautiful
3- The giant lives in a village, in the countryside.
4- They come to play in the giant's garden

3 Reorder the words:

- 1- New York has a lot of green spaces.
- 2- Our apartment is on the fifth floor.
- 3- You can walk through the garden.
- 4- New York is a very noisy city.
- 5- There aren't many parks in New York.
- 6- The lovely garden makes the children happy.
- 7- The giant lives in a village.
- 8- There are tall trees in the garden.

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- What is Wael's favorite place in New York?
- 2- No, I don't want any more candy.
- 3- Let's have a picnic in the park north of Giza.
- 4- Can you give me the blue crayon, please?

5 Write a text of (50) words:

"A visit to Alexandria"

Last summer, my parents took me to Alexandria. We went to a lot of restaurants and had a lot of fun. We also went to the Alexandria library, which was really cool. I learned a lot about the history of Alexandria there. I had a really happy time in Alexandria, and I can't wait to go back someday.

Lessons (4&5)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- a 2- a 3- f 4- b 5- c

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1) apartment 2) floor 3) street 4) view

3 Reorder the words:

- 1- How are things with you?
- 2- Our apartment is in the city center.
- 3- We have a great view over the trees.
- 4- People use the park for meeting friends.
- 5- Scottish people love eating porridge.

Connect 6

Answer Key

6- I have a lot of new friends

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- I'm finally in Scotland
- 2- What does she miss about Egypt?
- 3- She lives in London, the capital of England.
- 4- What's your favorite subject, Nahla?
- 5- I eat Scottish food, but Egyptian food is better.

5 Write an email of (50) words:

From: fares@gmail.com

To: hani@yahoo.com

Subject: My new life in England

Hi Hani,

How are things? I hope you're doing well. Guess what? I'm now living in England! It's a big change from Egypt, but I'm getting used to it. There are so many new things to see and do here. I miss the weather and the Egyptian food a lot. I can't find any good koshari or ful medames here! Anyway, I hope to hear back from you soon.

Best wishes,

Fares

Test (1) on unit (1)

"خصر لأزهر الشريف"

1 Listen and choose the correct word:

- 1- cities 2- nature 3- forest

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1- apartment 2- view 3- park

3 Choose the correct word (s):

- 1- usually goes 2- often
3- is always 4- a

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

- 1- garden 2- volunteers
- 3- They usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions and lettuce.
- 4- This year, they have lemons and dates.

5 Reorder the words:

- 1- We grow vegetables to eat.
- 2- How often do you see your friends?
- 3- What do you usually do at Sham El Nessim?

Complete the following sentence:
I go to the club on Monday.

Write an email of (50) words.

From: magdy@school

To: yousef@hotmail.com

Subject: The summer holiday

Dear Yousef,

Guess what? I had an amazing summer trip to a super cool village! There were so many different plants, like colorful flowers and tall sunflowers. I even saw cute farm animals like sheep and cows. But the best part was meeting the friendly people who lived there. They were so nice and told me all about their village. I had the best time ever! I can't wait to hear about your summer trips, too. See you soon!

Best wishes,

Magdy

Test (2) on unit (1)

1- Read and choose the correct word.
1- village 2- trees 3- afternoon

2- Read and complete the dialogue:
1- community 2- neighborhood
3- vegetables

3- Choose the correct word (s):
1- usually goes 2- a
3- often 4- are rarely

4- Read and match (A) with (B):
1- c 2- f 3- d 4- a 5- b

5- Read the text and answer the questions:
1- less 2- smaller
3- It refers to the great forests of the world.
4- If these forests disappear, the climate of the world will change.

6- Reorder the words:
1- What things do you grow?
2- Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?
3- Wael's family lives in a tall building.

7- Punctuate the following sentence:
Are Dina and Yasmin good at planting trees?

8- Write a text of (50) words:
"Parks"

like to read books
parks. It's important
Next time you
enjoy the

Unit 2

Lesson (1)

1- Read and complete the dialogue

1- nervous 2- shy 3- break 4- calm

2- Read and match (A) with (B):

1- d 2- e 3- b 4- c
5- f 6- g 7- a

3- Choose the correct answer:

1- helpful 2- funny 3- friendly 4- good
5- polite 6- messy 7- nervous 8- kind
9- clever 10- calm 11- shy 12- organized

4- Reorder the words:

1- How does Hazem feel today?
2- We are all very friendly.
3- I feel a bit nervous.
4- Do you have all your books?
5- We can share my book today.
6- You are really organized.
7- He shows respect to everyone.
8- She has long black hair.

5- Punctuate the following sentences:

1- What does Basim offer to share with his friend?
2- School starts in September.
3- Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?
4- I don't go to school on Friday or Saturday.
5- How does Mustafa feel today?

6- Write an email of (50) words:

From: malak@gmail.com

To: aliaa@gmail.com

Subject: My first day at school

Dear Aliaa,

I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you about my first day at school. I was a bit nervous at first, but I made new friends.

Step Ahead

Basel was really nice, and we shared books. The teachers are very kind. Miss Amira, who teaches English, is funny. Mr. Ahmed, who teaches science, has short black hair, and he is very helpful. I can't wait to hear about your first day at school too!
Lots of love,
Malak

Lesson (2)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- c 2- g 3- a 4- f 5- e 6- b 7- d

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

1- school 2- study
3- equipment 4- open area

3 Read and complete the text:

1- area 2- break 3- benches 4- fountain

4 Choose the correct answer:

1- who 2- which 3- where
4- which 5- where 6- who
7- which 8- which 9- where
10- where 11- who 12- which

5 Choose the correct answer:

1- surprised 2- surprising 3- bored
4- bored 5- exciting 6- excited
7- interested 8- interesting 9- tired
10- tiring

6 Reorder the words:

1- We are proud of our modern buildings.
2- This is a large open area.
3- Where do you study Arabic?
4- I'm surprised to see you!
5- She is interested in science.
6- He loves using laptops all the time.
7- English is my favorite school subject.
8- Who is your math teacher?

7 Write the following sentences.

1- Kareem is a clever boy.
2- Do you like your school, Amgad?
3- Who is your math teacher?
4- My parents take me to the park every Friday.
5- When does Manal wake up for school?

Lesson (3)

1 Read and write in the correct column:

/æ/ sound track - hat - mat - bag - angry - animal - happy
/ʊ/ sound: cut - truck - hungry - brush - duck - nuts - funny

2 Round the numbers:

1) 2 2) 13 3) 1 4) 5 5) 25
6) 19 7) 8 8) 42 9) 32 10) 87

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

1- 22 2- a little
3- The students need 2 cans of paint to paint the walls. 4- They will have at least 20 liters of paint left over.

4 Reorder the words:

1- The weather is sunny today.
2- Something is moving inside the house.
3- Who is inside the house?
4- Hare runs to the forest.
5- There's an animal in my house.
6- Elephants are afraid of mice!
7- Hare hears a noise inside her house.

5 Write a text of (50) words:

"An interesting story I read"
I read an interesting story about a brave young girl and her brave adventures. I read it last week before bedtime. The main characters are Lily and a talking dragon named Spark. I liked Spark the most because he helped Lily solve problems. The story was full of excitement and surprises!

Lessons (4&5)

1 Read and complete the text:

1- pets 2- soft 3- friendly 4- walk

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- pets 2- soft 3- independent
4- sharp 5- pet

3 Reorder the words:

1- Cats are my favorite animals.
2- Fish are the best pets.
3- Soft fur is nice to touch.
4- I love to keep my pet clean.
5- Cats have sharp claws and teeth.
6- Hany writes about his favorite pet.
7- Dogs are very friendly pets.
8- Why do people love to keep pets?
9- We want to go to the beach.
10- Dalia is clever and polite.

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- This is Arwa's lovely pet.
- 2- No, we don't need to go to the school on Saturday.
- 3- Mohamed Salah is a famous footballer.
- 4- What's your favorite animal?
- 5- Those aren't my shoes.

5 Write a text of (50) words:

"My favorite pet"

My favorite pet is a cat. It eats cat food and sometimes fish. It sleeps on a nice bed in my room. I pet it softly and play with it using toys. The good things about having a pet are the company and fun it brings, but I need to clean up after it. In total, I love my cat because it brings me joy.

Test (3) on unit (2)

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

- 1- where 2- benches 3- plants

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1 interesting 2 brave

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- where 2- surprising 3- who 4- but

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

- 1- soft 2- fur
3- Because they are beautiful with soft fur, and they are clean, calm and friendly animals.
4- Cats use their sharp claws and teeth when they are scared.

5 Reorder the words:

- 1- How does Hazem feel today?
- 2- Which school subjects do you like?
- 3- My new school is great.

6 Punctuate the following sentence:

Yes, we are going to the zoo on Thursday.

7 Write an email of (50) words:

"My school"

My school is big and has many classrooms, laboratories, and a gymnasium. I go to school every morning. I'm never late for school. I like going to school because I meet my friends and play

in the playground and playing field. They are very kind and helpful. It is a fun place to learn and play. We are all proud.

Test (4) on unit (2)

1 Listen and choose the correct word

- 1 computer 2 technology 3 TV

2 Listen and complete the sentences

- 1- science 2- laboratories 3- experiment

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 who 2 where 3- interested 4 which

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1 f 2 e 3 b 4 a 5 c

5 Read the text and answer the questions.

- 1- Three 2- famous
3- It refers to fish.
4- You should love and care for it, and you have to feed it.

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- These are the shoes which I wear to school.
2- What does Amr like?
3- Children can grow plants with Mr. Mahdi.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

What's the weather like in Egypt in January?

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: sarah@gmail.com

To: hagar@gmail.com

Subject: My school

Hi Hagar!

I hope you're doing well. I wanted to tell you about my school and the classrooms we have. We have different rooms for different subjects like math, science and English. In the science lab, we do fun experiments, and in the art room, we paint and draw.

Outside, we have a big playground with swings and slides. During break, I usually play football with my friends. It's so much fun! We also have an open area with beautiful flowers and benches where we sit and chat.

can't wait to hear about your school, too!
 Feel up soon and share more
 of love!

Unit 2

Lesson (1)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

- (A) 1- (b) 2- (e) 3- (a) 4- (d) 5- (c)

2 Read and complete the dialogue:
 (A) I went to the Museum. (B) I like it.

3 Choose the correct answer:
 (A) I explored. (B) I try. (C) I quad biking.
 (D) I went. (E) I comb. (F) I on.

4 Reorder the words:

I heard about our vacation.
 First, we try now package.
 Then, we visit the Manshi Palace.
 If we can go quad biking in the desert.
 We can hear about 30 minutes.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. I heard we explore the souks on
 2. I heard more interesting places in Cairo?
 3. I heard to Charm El Sheikh on Monday.
 4. I heard you enjoy your vacation?
 5. I heard I can't go to Giza by bike.
 6. I heard don't we visit the Egyptian Museum
 7. I heard today?

6 Write an email of (50) words:

to: my friend@gmail.com
 from: my friend@school.net
 Subject: My vacation
 Hi, I'm happy!

Hope you're doing great! I just got back
 from an awesome vacation, and I can't
 wait to tell you all about it. I visited some
 very cool places. First, I went to the
 beach and built sandcastles. The waves
 were so much fun to play in! Then, I went
 hiking in the mountains and saw beautiful
 scenery. It was like a magical forest! I
 also went to the zoo and saw lions,
 monkeys and elephants. I had the best

Connect 6

Answer Key

time ever and can't wait to hear about your
 adventures too!
 I wish you
 all the best!

Lesson (1)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):
 1- try 2- have 3- concentrate 4- work

2 Read and complete the text:
 1- eat 2- remainder 3- write
 4- I

3 Read and complete the text:
 1) door 2) pencil
 3) dictionary 4) social media

4 Choose the correct word:
 1) When 2) if 3) choose 4) switches
 5) but 6) and 7) or 8) because
 9) so 10) then 11) when 12) where
 13) how 14) why 15) what 16) who
 17) how 18) doesn't work
 19) can't buy 20) tries

5 Choose the correct word:
 1- In 2- at 3- on 4- in 5- on
 6- on 7- on 8- at 9- in 10- in

6 Reorder the words:
 1- Study for about 30 minutes but no
 longer.
 2- We can have fun in the city.
 3- My dad goes to the market.
 4- We had a great time with this product.
 5- How do you manage time during study
 time?
 6- Can we go to the city by bus?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:
 1. Mom, there's a problem with the freezer.
 2. Mrs. Manal let us use pencils in the test.
 3. We had a math class on Sunday.
 4. He went on a trip to Hurghada in October.
 5. Which city do you like to live in, Giza or
 Alexandria?

Lesson (1)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):
 1- (e) 2- (c) 3- (a) 4- (b) 5- (d)

2 Read and complete the text:
 1) cousin 2) Awar 3) family 4) Dome

3

/v/ (volcano - violin - vegetables - vat - veil)
/w/ (water - wolf - window - west - worm)

4 Read the text and answer.

- 1- afraid 2- fantastic
- 3- They see the view of the city
- 4- Amal helped Fatima to feel calmer. She took her hand and smiles

5 Reorder the words:

- 1- I want to see all the famous places
- 2- Amal shows Fatima a photo.
- 3- Little Deer runs through the forest
- 4- There's a great view from there!
- 5- He doesn't know what to say.
- 6- She wants to make everyone happy.
- 7- I don't want to disappoint you.
- 8- Bear has a drink from the river.

6 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her
- 2- What's the weather like on Sunday?
- 3- How much does it cost?
- 4- I don't like reading
- 5- Yes give me some water, please
- 6- He's a clever boy
- 7- No she isn't good at painting
- 8- It is Amal's first time in Aswan

Lessons (4 & 5)

1 Listen and choose the dialogue:

- 1) birthday 2) fantasy
- 3) rollercoaster 4) present

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1) theater 2) screens 3) effects 4) realistic

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- brave 2- interesting
- 3- Tamer is at the Carnival with his family.
- 4- They are at the Carnival because it is Tamer's special birthday surprise.

4 Reorder the words:

- 1- I'm at the Carnival with my family.
- 2- There are a lot of shows and concerts.
- 3- I don't like rollercoasters.
- 4- Did you enjoy your time with Talia?
- 5- We have tickets for the waterfalls.
- 6- I want to go to the simulation theater.

5 Punctuate

1- I've made a birthday surprise at the Carnival

2- you can't eat my burgers
3- I named Salah a good footballer
4- I've been reading a lot
5- I'm on time with my family a lot

6 Read the text and answer:

"A big holiday is coming. First we had the holiday at the carnival! First we started with the most exciting roller coaster and it made us scream and laugh with joy and I loved it! Then we hopped on the Great Train and saw cool things. After that, we went to a simulation theater, and it felt like I was inside a movie! We even got to see magical waterfalls. I had so much fun playing games, too!

Test (5) on unit (3)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1- first 2- climb up 3- view

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1- vacation 2- Dome 3- view

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- goes 2- at 3- help 4- on

4 Read the text and answer:

- 1- 26 2- home
- 3- "They" refers to Ahmed and Eman.
- 4- Eman likes playing computer games in her free time. She also likes watching TV

5 Reorder the words:

- 1- She is afraid of heights.
- 2- Wolf has a drink from the lake.
- 3- What are your tips for studying?

6 Punctuate the following sentence:

Should Tamer go quad biking on Wednesday?

7 Write an email of (50) words:

From: menna@yahoo.com
To: shaza@hotmail.com
Subject: Getting ready for midterm tests
Hi Shaza,
I hope you're doing well! I wanted to tell you how I study for midterm tests. I make a timetable for each subject, take breaks between sessions, and ask for help when

Step Ahead

needed. I'm good at English and math, but not good at Arabic or science. Let's teach each other!

Test (6) on unit (3)

1 Listen and choose:

1- Carnival 2- rollercoaster 3- theaters

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

1- birthday 2- Carnival 3- rollercoaster

3 Choose the correct answer:

1- on 2- can't 3- goes 4- on

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (e) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:

1- smallest 2- expensive
Fady wrote this email

4- The restaurants in Sharm El-Sheikh have fantastic and delicious food, but it isn't cheap.

6 Reorder the words:

1- When do you get up on school days?
2- Let's go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!
3- Suddenly, she doesn't feel scared anymore.

7 Punctuate:

1- Nasma's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her in Aswan.

8 Write a text of (50) words:

"A visit to Cairo Tower"

Last weekend, I went to Cairo Tower with my family. We had so much fun! We ate many Egyptian food at the tower's restaurant. From the top, we saw the beautiful city and famous places like the River Nile and the Pyramids. It was an amazing experience! I had so much fun.

Unit 4

Lesson (1)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (f) 2- (f) 3- (b) 4- (e) 5- (a)

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- fireworks 2- playlist 3- send

Connect 6

Answer Key

4) string 5) decorating 6) hanging
7) blow up 8) make

3 Read and complete the dialogue:

hanging string - balloons birthday

4 Reorder the words:

1- Will you come to my birthday party?
2- I don't like the chocolate cakes
3- My mom decorates all the cakes
4- My brother is blowing up the balloons
5- Did you let off the fireworks?
6- Let's play some nice music
7- Are you sending the invitations?
8- Dalida made a playlist for my party
9- We need an adult to let off the fireworks
10- I love all my friends.

5 Punctuate:

1) What are Nasma's sisters doing?
2) They don't like carnivals
3) Let's go to Sharm El-Sheikh on Monday
4) Do you enjoy your vacation?
5) No, I can't do this right now
6) Dalida and Noha are decorating the birthday cake.

6 Write an email of (50) words:

From: mona@gmail.com

To: radwa@yahoo.com

Subject: My birthday party

Dear Radwa,

I hope you're doing well! I want to invite you to my birthday party. It's going to be so much fun! I will hang up streamers and balloons, and my older brother will let off the fireworks. The party will be at my house on Saturday at 7 pm. I'll send you more details soon. I can't wait to celebrate with you!

Lots of love,

Mona

Lesson (2)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (f) 2- (a) 3- (e) 4- (b) 5- (d)

2 Choose the correct answer:

1- are 2- is not 3- are not 4- They 5- is
6- is 7- aren't 8- studying 9- Are / I am
10- doing 11- helping 12- is working
13- is 14- going up 15- are 16- practicing
17- am not 18- are 19- are playing 20- are
21- are eating 22- trying 23- are having fun
24- is 25- are cycling

1 Reorder the words:

- 1) We are laying the decorations today
- 2) Are they playing a game?
- 3) I'm wearing a new hat.
- 4) Ahmed is eating some cakes
- 5) My sisters are cooking some food
- 6) Is your dad taking photos?
- 7) Laila and Mona are helping their mom

2 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 Muhammad isn't playing basketball
- 2 He's wearing a wonderful suit
- 3 We aren't enjoying our vacation.
- 4 No, I am not happy.
- 5 Is Aliaa eating her sandwich?

3 Write a text of (50) words:

"What are I and my family doing these days?"
My family and I are doing a lot of things these days. We read books together, play games, and watch movies. We also help each other with housework around the house, like cooking and washing dishes. My mom works from home, so she is always around to help us with our homework. My dad works at the office, but he comes home early most days to spend time with us. We are all really close, and we love spending time together.

Lesson (3)

1 Read and complete.

- 1) celebrated 2) candles 3) parties 4) present

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (a) 2- (c) 3- (b) 4- (e) 5- (d)

3 Write the words in the correct column:

/ə/ (bed- head- shed- bread- pen)
/ei/ (cake - train- say- pay- wait)

4 Choose the correct answer:

- 1) main 2) shed 3) sail 4) met 5) pain

5 Read the text and answer:

- 1- blow out
- 2- candles
- 3- Children everywhere like party food.
- 4- They give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family: their mom and dad!

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- People often give other people birthday cards.
- 2- Who do we usually invite to birthday parties?
- 3- Children everywhere like party food

- 4- Which birthday tradition is the most interesting?
- 5- Some countries have different birthday food
- 6- How do you celebrate birthdays in your family?
- 7- Children like to blow out the candles

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 What do we do in Egypt?
- 2 In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give presents on birthdays
- 3 Who gets the first piece of birthday cake in India?
- 4 How old are Chinese children when they are born?

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: nada@school.net

To: jane@hotmail.com

Subject: Birthday traditions in Egypt
Hi Jane,

In Egypt, we celebrate birthdays with cakes, candles and music. We sing special songs, and the birthday boy or girl blows out candles on a cake, one for each year of their life. We have a lot of fun at birthday parties! We play games, eat food, and make lots of noise. It's a great time to celebrate with friends and family. I hope you have a happy birthday soon!

Lots of love,
Nada

Lessons (4&5)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (b) 4- (a)

2 Reorder the words:

- 1- I invite you to my school's Mother's Day celebration.
- 2- We are organizing a special day.
- 3- We are inviting people from the local community.
- 4- Did you enjoy your time with your friends?
- 5- We have tickets for the party
- 6- I want to go to the zoo.

3 Read the text and answer:

- 1- Invite
- 2- Sunday
- 3- The invitation is addressed to Mr Ahmed Hegazy.
- 4- Randa asks to receive Mr Ahmed's reply by February 20.

Test (7) on unit (3)

1. Choose the correct word to complete the sentence.
The children were very excited about the trip.
2. Complete the sentence with the correct form of the verb.
She was sitting on the bench when she saw the cat.
3. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
4. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
5. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
6. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
7. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
8. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
9. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
10. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.

Test (8) on unit (4)

1. Choose the correct word to complete the sentence.
The children were very excited about the trip.
2. Complete the sentence with the correct form of the verb.
She was sitting on the bench when she saw the cat.
3. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
4. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
5. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
6. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
7. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
8. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
9. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.
10. Write the correct form of the verb in brackets.
The children were playing football in the park.

Unit 5

Lesson (1)

1. Read and match (A) with (B).
1- (f) 2- (a) 3- (e) 4- (b) 5- (d)
2. Read and complete the text.
vacation - museum - island
3. Read the text and answer the questions.
1- explorer 2- camel
3- He went there in the 13th century
4- It's called "The Travels of Marco Polo".
4. Reorder the words.
1- I went to Dahab with my grandparents

1 Read the text and answer.

1. The first one was in 1991.
2. The second one was in 1992.
3. The third one was in 1993.
4. The fourth one was in 1994.

2 Reorder the words.

1. The first one was in 1991.
2. The second one was in 1992.
3. The third one was in 1993.
4. The fourth one was in 1994.
5. The fifth one was in 1995.
6. The sixth one was in 1996.
7. The seventh one was in 1997.
8. The eighth one was in 1998.
9. The ninth one was in 1999.
10. The tenth one was in 2000.

3 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. I went to Egypt on a camel that animal.
2. I went to Egypt on a camel that animal.
3. I went to Egypt on a camel that animal.
4. I went to Egypt on a camel that animal.
5. I went to Egypt on a camel that animal.
6. I went to Egypt on a camel that animal.
7. I went to Egypt on a camel that animal.
8. I went to Egypt on a camel that animal.
9. I went to Egypt on a camel that animal.
10. I went to Egypt on a camel that animal.

Lessons (4&5)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

1. (a) 2. (c) 3. (e) 4. (a) 5. (b)

2 Read the text and answer:

1. wood 2. early
2. A tall, serious man called Kareem.
3. They were awesome. They were huge and their skins were a sort of golden color.

3 Reorder the words:

1. I went on a felucca on the River Nile.
2. A felucca isn't made of metal.
3. Kareem was the captain of the boat.
4. A felucca is difficult to sail.
5. The boat had two white sails.
6. We had lunch on board the felucca.
7. I had such a wonderful experience!
8. Did you enjoy the trip?

4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. I saw the Pyramids of Giza.
2. He didn't come with us.
3. How? Amira and Rania's birthdays are in December.
4. How? You want to eat?
5. I went to Egypt.

5 Write an email of (50) words:

1. To: Jack
2. From: Ali
3. Subject: Egypt
4. Dear Jack,
5. Did you know that archaeologists have found something in Egypt? Like the tomb of Tutankhamun which was filled with treasures. We also found the Valley of the Kings where many pharaohs were buried. Please help us.
6. Write and send.
7. Ali

Test (9) on unit (5)

1 Listen and choose.

1. wood 2. traditional 3. River Nile

2 Read and complete:

1. explore 2. early 3. early 4. camel

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. went 2. did 3. was 4. felt 5. a

4 Read the text and answer:

1. bus
2. The trip took 1.5 hours. They left in the morning at 8 am and came back home at 10 pm.
3. They saw a lot of camels in the zoo.

5 Reorder the words:

1. The travelers found treasure last year.
2. What types of animals can you see?
3. I found some interesting objects.

6 Punctuate the following sentence:

1. No, I don't want to go to the club on Monday.

7 Write an email of (50) words:

1. From: Ali
2. To: Jack
3. Subject: Egypt
4. Dear Jack,
5. Did you know that archaeologists have found something in Egypt? Like the tomb of Tutankhamun which was filled with treasures. We also found the Valley of the Kings where many pharaohs were buried. Please help us.
6. Write and send.
7. Ali

Answers

learn more about Ancient Egypt. Tell me more about your country and its scenes. Write back soon.
Ali

Test (10) on unit (5)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1- Marco Polo 2- China 3- diary

2 Listen and complete:

- 1- objects 2- humans 3- sculptures

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- archaeologists 2- studied
3- caravan 4- come

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (f) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (e) 5- (c)

5 Read the text and answer:

- 1- trains 2- studies
3- It is traveling by air
4- In the past, people travelled on foot or horseback.

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- The museum had a lot of ancient objects from China.
2- Can you help me, please?
3- The scientists had an amazing experience.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

Are Dina and Yasmin good at planting trees?

8 Write a text of (50) words: "Deserts"

Deserts are places where it doesn't rain much. There is little water. The weather is very hot during the day and very cold at night. The sand dunes are big and can be hard to walk on. Animals that live in deserts have special ways to stay cool and find water. People who live in deserts also have to be very careful to stay safe.

Unit 6

Lesson 1

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (f) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (e) 5- (c)

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

Instructions – wax – palm trees – grams

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- candles 2- perfume 3- drops 4- wax
5- palm 6- stick 7- scales 8- soap

4 Reorder the words:

- 1- Perfume is so lovely.
2- I have two bottles of lemon oil.
3- We need one glass for each candle.
4- Heat the wax to melt it.
5- I don't like making candles.
6- What do we need to make candles?

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- What do Leila and her mom make?
2- Ahmed is such a clever student.
3- Do you like pizza?
4- No, my mom can't drive cars.
5- It's very cold in January.
6- Yes, but you don't need wax.

Lesson (2)

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- Nile 2- depended 3- foods

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (a) 4- (b)

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (c) 2- (d) 3- (b) 4- (a)

4 Read and complete the dialogues:

- 1- How much 2- How many
3- How many 4- How many 5- How much

5 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- How many 2- a few
3- How much 4- How many
5- a lot of 6- a little 7- How many
8- a lot of 9- How much 10- How much
11- a few 12- a little 13- a few
14- How many 15- How much 16- a few
17- a lot of 18- a little 19- any / some
20- a lot of 21- How many 22- any / some
23- How many 24- some 25- any
26- any 27- There are 28- There is
29- There is 30- There are 31- How much
32- How many 33- rice 34- potatoes
35- butter 36- carrots 37- is
38- are 39- is 40- Are

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies.

- 2- What did the Ancient Egyptians eat?
- 3- Most people in Ancient Egypt ate a little meat
- 4- There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt
- 5- How many bottles of milk are there?
- 6- How many bottles of milk are there?
- 7- How much oil do we need?

1 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- Adel doesn't like ice cream.
- 2- How many cups of coffee does Ramy drink?
- 3- The water of the Nile always helped the Egyptians
- 4- How much money do we need, Adel?
- 5- Yes, Samira plays tennis every Thursday.

2 Write an email of (50) words:

Hi Samira,
I'm from
Khartoum. Helping my mom
near Koba
I'm writing to tell you about a meal I helped
my mom make last night. It was chicken,
and it was delicious!
We started by chopping up some chicken,
potatoes, onions, and peppers. Then we
heated up some oil in a pan and cooked
the chicken until it was browned. We
added the vegetables and cooked them for
about 10 minutes, then we added some soy
sauce and mixed everything together.
I'm so glad I got to help my mom make it.
I'll be back soon and tell me all about the
new job you prepared.
Lots of love
Ramy

Lesson (3) Part (1)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (d) 2- (a) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (c)

2 Reorder the words:

- 1- What is the king doing?
- 2- Peter lives in a big palace
- 3- Where does Peter live?
- 4- The king wasn't happy
- 5- Why did the king leave the painting?
- 6- I didn't like the dining room
- 7- He can see crowns and scepters.
- 8- Where does Peter find the king?

Answer Key

1 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- Does Peter notice something strange?
- 2- Yes, we can't find the room.
- 3- I'm not really feeling good.
- 4- Did you see the Moroccan king?
- 5- An ancient Egyptian was a clever
- 6- Do you like eating ice cream?

2 Write a text of (50) words:

"A king I have read about"

I read about a king named King
Tutankhamun. He ruled in Ancient Egypt a
really long time ago. He became king when
he was just a young boy. I know that he had
a golden mask and lots of treasures in his
tomb. I think it's amazing that they
discovered his tomb after many years. I like
that he was a pharaoh and had a cool
golden mask. Ancient Egyptian stories are
really interesting.

Lesson (3) Part (2)

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- d 2- c 3- e 4- a 5- f

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1) teeth 2) stick 3) toothpaste 4) powder

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) mint 2) seeds 3) mixture 4) cool

4 Reorder the words:

- 1- Kaper was an expensive perfume in
Ancient Egypt.
- 2- Cheaper perfumes had a lot of spices in
them.
- 3- Do you like using perfumes?
- 4- The Ancient Egyptians loved strong
perfumes.
- 5- The Ancient Egyptians made mint
candies.

5 Write a text of (50) words:

"My personal care tools"

I take care of my body by washing my
hands with soap and water, brushing my
teeth with toothpaste and a toothbrush
twice a day, and combing my hair with a
hairbrush. I use shampoo to wash my
hair. I put on perfume and deodorant to
keep me smelling fresh.

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1) spices 2) restaurants
3) combinations 4) recipes

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1) perfume 2) cloth
3) souvenirs 4) tourists

3 Reorder the words:

- 1- He doesn't want to make salt dough.
- 2- What would you make with salt dough?
- 3- We are having fun together.
- 4- What do we use for spices?
- 5- Egypt is famous for its spices.
- 6- We can use spices to make perfume.
- 7- What colors are they?

4 Read the text and answer:

- 1- dirty 2- four
3- They washed in the Nile River or in public bathhouses.
4- They used essential oils and flower oils.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- What's Egypt famous for?
- 2- He's working on Fridays.
- 3- No, you're not coming with me.
- 4- Adel, Hazem, Qasem and Mustafa are my best friends.
- 5- Does Sama like all her school subjects?
- 6- Basim and Karim are playing in the garden.

Test (11) on unit (5)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1- a little 2- mint 3- expensive

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1- hairbrush 2- toothbrush 3- soap

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- wax 2- palace 3- many 4- any

4 Read the text and answer:

- 1- patients 2- bread
3- She helps doctors and looks after sick people.
4- Because she always smiles at them and she loves them.

5 Reorder the words:

- 1- How many lemons do we need?

- 2- Sama likes a lot of milk in her tea.
3- Peter took in a hot palace with his p...

6 Punctuate the following sentence: Farmers grow lots of different spices in

7 Write a text of (50) words: "Egyptian Flavors"

Egyptian spices are famous all over the world. They are used in many different recipes. We don't only use spices to cook food. We also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks. For example, spices are one of the favorite souvenirs that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

Test (12) on unit (6)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1- a little 2- honey 3- drinks

2 Listen and complete the sentences: 1- ... 2- cloth 3- souvenirs

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a lot of 2- mint 3- ... 4- much

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:

- 1- tidy 2- interesting
3- Students have to follow their school rules.
4- School teaches students how to be good people.

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- Stir the chocolate pieces into the mixture.
2- There is a little shampoo.
3- How much oil do we need?

7 Punctuate the following sentence: I enjoy this drink in Egypt and Morocco

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: ramy@yahoo.com

To: bell@school.net

Subject: The famous drinks from my country!

Hi Bell,

How are you? I wanted to share some famous drinks from my country, Egypt. One famous drink is called "Lemonade". We

Step Ahead

... it by squeezing fresh lemons, adding
... and some sugar. It's perfect for hot
... er days or when we have picnics. Tell
... out the famous drinks you have in
... d. I can't wait to hear from you!
... of love.

Final Revision

Revision on Unit 1

- 1 Read and complete the text:
... 2) theater 3) usually 4) stay
- 2 Read and complete the text:
... 2) species 3) performance 4) hang
- 3 Read and complete the text:
... 2) play 3) silent 4) brown
- 4 Read and complete the text:
... 2) view 3) friends 4) Castle
- 5 Read and complete the text:
... 2) restaurants 3) delicious 4) miss
- 6 Read and complete the dialogue:
... 2) kids 3) countryside 4) Nile
- 7 Read and match (A) with (B):
... 2- (d) 3- (c) 4- (f) 5- (b)
- 8 Read and match (A) with (B):
... 2 (e) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (b)
- 9 Read and match (A) with (B):
... 2- (f) 3- (e) 4- (a) 5- (c)
- 10 Read and match (A) with (B):
... 2 (a) 3- (f) 4- (b) 5- (d)
- 11 Reorder the words:
1- My grandpa rarely visits us.
2- Ahmed is always good to his friends.
3- Akram sometimes goes swimming.
4- How often do you go to club?
5- The giant builds a wall around his garden.
6- She visits her grandma twice a week.
7- You can hang out with your friends.
8- We always plant trees.
9- The High Line was a railway line.
10- Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

Connect 6

- 11- The people here are nice
- 12- How are things in Alexandria?
- 13- I often go there with my parents
- 14- You can walk through the gardens
- 15- Now York is very noisy all the time
- 16- Tell me all the news from home
- 17- We sometimes go to the movie theater
- 18- I usually spend time with my sisters
- 19- They live on a farm in the countryside.
- 20- What do you like about your neighborhood?

12 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- New York has a lot of green spaces
- 2- I miss Egyptian food so much
- 3- Your new dress sounds great, Mariam.
- 4- How are things in Alexandria?
- 5- There are lots of restaurants in New York
- 6- What things does she miss about Egypt?
- 7- Please write back soon.
- 8- How are things with you?
- 9- Is Ahmed good at planting trees?
- 10- Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better.
- 11- I don't know the names of Chinese dishes.
- 12- Samira's family lives in a tall building.
- 13- What's Wael's favorite place in Egypt?

13 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- volunteers 2- miss 3- block 4- plant
- 5- Organic 6- harvest 7- grow 8- sell
- 9- fertilizer 10- clean 11- residents 12- floor
- 13- selfish 14- green 15- railway

14 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- see 2- work 3- never 4- is always
- 5- often 6- twice 7- rarely 8- live
- 9- get 10- do 11- are 12- has
- 13- is 14- have 15- usually has
- 16- sometimes play 17- are never
- 18- never 19- usually walk
- 20- always passes 21- never
- 22- always studies 23- often go
- 24- never gives

15 Write a text of (50) words:

"A day with my friends"

I had the best day with my friends! We went to the park and took the bus there. We enjoyed playing on the swings and slides. We even had a picnic and ate

yummy sandwiches. We drank juice to stay hydrated. When it was time to go home, we were tired but so happy. I can't wait to have more fun days like this with my friends!

Test (1) on Unit (1)

1 Listen and choose.

- 1- plants 2- nature 3- wildlife

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

- 1- harvest 2- Roof 3- make

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- never 2- usually watch 3- selfish 4- after

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (d) 2- (a) 3- (e) 4- (b) 5- (c)

5 Read the text and answer:

- 1- Alexandria 2- three
3- He is 38 years old
4- He reads useful stories to his children

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- His garden is usually beautiful.
2- People use the park for sports.
3- There are tall trees in the garden.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

What dish does Amir like to have on Friday?

8 Write an e-mail of (50) words:

From: selim@hotmail.com

To: fady@outlook.com

Subject: My apartment

Hey Fady!

I wanted to tell you about my apartment. It's really cool! It's on the fourth floor. I have my own room with a big window. I love looking out and seeing the city. The living room is relaxing, and we have a big TV for movie nights. In my neighborhood, there's a park nearby where I play with my friends. We also have a restaurant and a library. I love living here!

Take care,

Selim

Revision on Unit 1

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1) which 2) takes 3) where 4) who

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1) fur 2) touch 3) claws

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1) proud 2) buildings 3) map 4) long

4 Read and complete the text:

- 1) stomach 2) carrots 3) noise 4) Har...

5 Read and complete the text:

- 1) classroom 2) calculate
3) paint 4) measurements

6 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (d) 2- (c) 3- (b) 4- (c) 5- (a)

7 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (c) 2- (d) 3- (b) 4- (a) 5- (c)

8 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (a) 2- (b) 3- (c) 4- (c) 5- (b)

9 Reorder the words:

- 1- Do you have all your books yet?
- 2- We all keep calm in the library.
- 3- How does Karima feel today?
- 4- I don't go to school on Fridays
- 5- Is everything OK?
- 6- This is the place where students study science.
- 7- These laboratories have all the equipment.
- 8- His birthday party was exciting.
- 9- These are the shoes which I wear to school.
- 10- When does Manal wake up for school?
- 11- Who is your math teacher?
- 12- We can share my books today.
- 13- Cats are my favorite pets.
- 14- Wandaland is a fantasy TV series

10 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- Welcome to our school, Hazem
- 2- Do you have all your books yet, Ahmed?
- 3- You're really organized, Basel.
- 4- I love English and Arabic.
- 5- I love the story of Hare.
- 6- No, we don't need to get up early on Saturdays.
- 7- Lions are not friendly animals
- 8- Amira and Huda are going to school next Monday.
- 9- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- 10- Hello, my name is Hassan Ali.

1. Choose the correct answer.

2. Choose the correct answer.

3. Write an email of (50) words from nancy@hotmail.com to hena@yahoo.com.

Dear Hena, I wanted to tell you that my dad works at an office, and with numbers. My mom and she helps students. My older brother loves to practice every day. He is drawing and she is drawing. As for me, I love to play the piano. We all do the things we do every day.

Test (2) on unit (2)

1. Listen and choose:

1- calculate 2- measure

2. Listen and complete the sentences:

1- series 2- interesting 3- world

3. Choose the correct answer:

1- Shy 2- 5.00 3- who 4- thing

4. Read and match (A) with (B):

1- e 2- (a) 3- (c) 4- (b) 5- (d)

5. Read the text and answer:

1- five 2- cousin

3- Shady always plays with his sister while she is cooking, and he is cleaning.

4- Dina. She hit Ayman on his head with a

Connect 6:

6. Listen and choose:

1- 12:00 2- 12:00 3- 12:00 4- 12:00

7. Listen and choose:

1- 12:00 2- 12:00 3- 12:00 4- 12:00

8. Write the text:

"My pet"

I have the cutest pet ever! It's a dog. Its name is Max. Every day, when I wake up, I make sure to feed him and give him fresh water. I also brush his fur to keep him clean and happy. I love Max because he is always there to play with me and he makes me feel safe. He's the best friend a kid could have!

Revision on Unit 3

1. Read and choose:

1) biking 2) helmet 3) book 4) tour

2. Read and complete the text:

1) understand 2) details
3) background 4) actor

3. Read and complete the text:

1) fantasy 2) exciting 3) rides 4) theaters

4. Read and complete the text:

1) get up 2) at 3) library 4) on

5. Read and match:

1- (e) 2- (a) 3- (f) 4- (c) 5- (d)

6. Read and match:

1- (d) 2- (f) 3- (a) 4- (b) 5- (c)

7. Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (d) 2- (e) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (c)

8. Read and match (A) with (B):

1- (f) 2- (d) 3- (e) 4- (b) 5- (a)

9. Reorder the words:

- 1- Little Deer runs through the forest
- 2- What do the girls do at Bab Zawiya?
- 3- What is the weather like on Sunday?
- 4- Should we explore the souks on Monday?
- 5- I enjoy my time with my family a lot
- 6- Let's go to the Manial Palace Museum.
- 7- I am really excited about our vacation.

32

- 8- We can travel to Cairo
- 9- I'm excited about our vacation this week
- 10- The view from the top is beautiful
- 11- I often get up late on Sundays
- 12- We can go quad biking in the desert
- 13- Where will the guide meet us?
- 14- What else can we do?
- 15- What time do we get back?
- 16- The tour guide will meet us at the hotel
- 17- Everyone is wearing helmets
- 18- I need my credit card to pay for the tickets

10 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- We celebrate Sharm El-Nessim in spring
- 2- My English always gets better if I practice it
- 3- How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?
- 4- How does a rollercoaster work?
- 5- They went on a trip to the Red Sea
- 6- I'm having a party next Thursday
- 7- Let's go to Alexandria in August
- 8- Are there big parks in Cairo?
- 9- My brother doesn't like carnivals.
- 10- There are many buses from Luxor to Aswan

11 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- ride 2- concentrate 3- celebrate 4- having
5- get 6- take 7- switches off 8- heights
9- sunset 10- plan 11- work 12- theater
13- climb 14- proud

12 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- switches 2- visit 3 doesn't have 4 miss
take 6 go 7 don't hurry 8 can visit
9- ask 10- in 11- at 12- on
13- on 14- on 15- at

13 Write a text of (50) words:

"A week in Sharm El-Sheikh"

I had a week in Sharm El-Sheikh with my family. We went to the beach every day and swam in the sea. We also went snorkeling and saw lots of fish and coral reefs. The sun and fresh air made me feel so happy and healthy. It was so much fun! I would definitely recommend Sharm El-Sheikh to anyone who wants to have a

great beach vacation. I would back someday!

Test (9) on unit (9)

1 Listen and choose.

- 1- remember 2- write

2 Listen and complete the sentences.

- 1- scored 2- climb 3- slow

3 Choose the correct answer.

- 1- can 2- in 3- can go 4-

4 Read and match (A) with (B).

- 1- (d) 2- (e) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5-

5 Read the text and answer:

- 1- winter
- 2- They come to enjoy the fine weather, sunshine of Egypt when it is very cool in other countries
- 3- They buy some souvenirs

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- Should Tamer go quad biking Wednesday?
- 2- Why do you like the park?
- 3- How can she climb up the hill?

7 Punctuate the following sentence.

When I was young...

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: maged@gmail.com
To: farid@yahoo.com
Subject: An article I read
Hi Farid,

I hope this email finds you well.
I was reading an article in the newspaper the other day about how to study. First, make a study plan. This will help you stay organized and make sure you cover all the material. Find a quiet place to study. Take breaks. Studying for long periods of time can affect you badly. Get up and move around every 20 minutes. Get enough sleep. When you are rested, you'll be better able to focus and remember what you've studied. Tell me your opinion on that topic. See you soon,
Maged

Unit 4

1 Read and complete the text
1- am 2- f 3- e 4- s 5- a
6- b 7- t 8- o 9- f 10- e 11- t
12- a 13- e 14- o 15- s 16- t

2 Read and complete the text
1- the day 2- left

3 Read and complete the text
1- celebration
2- d 3- a 4- o 5- n

4 Match (A) with (B):
1- a 2- d 3- a 4- f 5- b

5 Match (A) with (B):
1- e 2- a 3- d 4- c 5- b

6 Match (A) with (B):
1- a 2- c 3- e 4- b 5- f

7 Reorder the words.

- 1- How many people can attend the party?
- 2- How many people are coming?
- 3- Can you blow up some balloons?
- 4- Can you borrow your phone, please?
- 5- Can you make the cake for the party?
- 6- Can you be playing football with the balloons.

- 7- Amira is reading a book in an armchair
- 8- Can you pass me the glue, please?
- 9- We are organizing a special day for the event.
- 10- Who is the birthday party for?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1 Do you often go to birthday parties?
- 2 What are you doing, Youssef?
- 3 We can ask Adel to make a playlist.
- 4 Don't like chocolate cake
- 5 Mr Yousry is blowing up the balloon.
- 6 We are practicing for the football game on Sunday.
- 7 Will you feed the cat, please?
- 8 We don't know how to make a cake.
- 9 Yes, Marwa bought a new car.
- 10 No, I don't think Heba will come.

9 Choose the correct answer: Vocab

- 1- celebration 2- blow out 3- community
- 4- let off 5- decorating 6- hanging up
- 7- sending 8- playlist 9- RSVP
- 10- about 11- Adults 12- guests
- 13- noodles 14- attend

Connect 6

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer:
1- am 2- f 3- e 4- s 5- a
6- b 7- t 8- o 9- f 10- e 11- t
12- a 13- e 14- o 15- s 16- t

2 Write a text of (50) words

Mother's Day is celebrated on
Every year we celebrate the
Mother's Day. We celebrate it in March
every year. It is a very happy day. I always
buy mom a nice present. I always give her
flowers with that present. Mom is very
happy on that day. We all wait for that day
every year. It is a very happy day.

Test (4) on unit (4)

1 Listen and choose the correct word
1- reading 2- ages 3- history

2 Read and complete the dialogue
1- party 2- blow out 3- but

3 Choose the correct word (s):
1- bum 2- sending 3- s 4- taking

4 Match (A) with (B):
1- e 2- d 3- f 4- a 5- c

5 Read the text and answer the questions
1- games 2 Tuesday
3- Next Thursday
4- All her friends will come to the party

6 Reorder the words:
1- Display a poster on your classroom wall
2- Who is the invitation addressed to?
3- Amira is reading a book in an armchair

7 Punctuate the following sentences:
- Are there any special birthday traditions
in Egypt?

8 Write a text of (50) words:
"A present you received on your birthday"
I celebrate my birthday every year. I
always have a party on that day. Lots of
people give me presents on that day. But
last year I received the best present I have
been given ever. My dad gave me a new
smart phone. It was modern and
wonderful. I was very happy. I took lots of
pictures with it on that day.

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: amgad@gmail.com

To: amr@outlook.com

Subject: A day in my diary

Hi Amr,

I hope this email finds you well.

I'm writing to tell you about my day yesterday. I woke up at 7:00 am and had breakfast with my family. Then, I went to school and had classes until 3:00 pm. After school, I went to the library to study for a test. I finished studying at 6:00 pm and went home to eat dinner. I watched TV for a while and then went to bed at 11:00 pm. It was a pretty normal day, but I'm glad I got to spend some time with my family and friends.

How was your day?

Talk to you soon.

Amgad

Revision on Unit 6

1 Read and complete the text:

- 1- oils 2- roots 3- protects 4- healthy

2 Read and complete the text:

- 1- bees 2- honey 3- dates 4- drinks

3 Read and complete the text:

- 1- perfumes 2- expensive 3- herbs 4- mint

4 Read and complete the text:

- 1- spices 2- taste 3- preserve 4- jars

5 Match (A) with (B):

- 1- f 2- c 3- a 4- e 5- b

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- Ancient Egyptians liked to eat well.
- 2- We need a few lemons for the recipe.
- 3- I like a lot of milk in my tea.
- 4- We use spices to cook food.
- 5- Spices are sold in stores.
- 6- Tourists buy souvenirs when they visit Egypt.
- 7- Their toothpaste had salt and pepper in it.
- 8- Is there any butter in the bowl?
- 9- There's a little money in my mom's bag.
- 10- There are some students in the laboratory.

Answer Key

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. There isn't any bread in the kitchen.
2. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes.
3. How did some leaders in Ancient Egypt use kapet?
4. How much milk does Hend want in your coffee?
5. Mint tea is a traditional drink in north Africa.
6. Do you always brush your teeth?
7. No I am not going to brush my teeth.
8. Omar works in a bakery next to our house.

8 Choose the correct answer: Vocab

- 1- secret 2- squeeze 3- Heat 4- souvenirs
5- soap 6- spices 7- smells 8- pour 9- care
10- stores 11- crown 12- astonished

9 Choose the correct answer: Grammar

- 1- much 2- some 3- much 4- a little
5- lemons 6- few 7- some 8- some 9- many
10- much 11- are 12- is 13- some 14- a lot

Test (6) on unit (6)

1 Listen and choose the correct word:

- 1- palace 2- caretakers 3- mysterious

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

- 1- spices 2- restaurants 3- recipes

3 Choose the correct word (s):

- 1- famous 2- mint 3- spices 4- isn't

4 Match (A) with (B):

- 1- e 2- f 3- a 4- b 5- d

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

- 1- home 2- walked
3- Ten. 4- Because he felt tired.

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- How much homework did you do yesterday?
- 2- Ancient Egyptians took care of their bodies.
- 3- Where does Peter find the king?

7 Punctuate the following sentences:

- What did Ancient Egyptians use to take care of themselves?

Answer Key

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: maged@gmail.com

To: selim@yahoo.com

Subject: Personal care routines

Dear Selim,

How are you and your family? I hope you are well. I'm pleased to write to you now. I'm writing to tell you about my personal care routines. The most important is washing my hands before and after having meals. I also brush my teeth twice a day. I brush my hair regularly. And of course have a shower or a bath from time to time. I use shampoo, soap, toothpaste, toothbrush and a hairbrush.

Lots of love

Magda

Part 3 School Exams

Test (1)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1- organization 2- nature 3- best

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

- 1- harvest 2- Roof 3- make

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- helpful 2- on 3- much 4- railway

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (e) 2- (d) 3- (a) 4- (f) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:

- 1- quiet 2- happy
3- They lived in small houses.
4- No, there wasn't.

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- I buy a lot of personal care products.
2- Do you want to come to my house?
3- Mariam doesn't like eating fast food.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
Do you like reading books?

8 Write a text of (50) words:

"How did Ancient Egyptians like to be clean?"

The Ancient Egyptians liked to be clean in different ways. They loved using perfumes that smelled strong and nice. They even had special oils for their skin. To clean their teeth, the Ancient Egyptians used a

type of toothbrush – a stick with small pieces of papyrus tied to it at one end. They liked to wash themselves in the River Nile.

Test (2)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1- products 2- perfume 3- expensive

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

- 1- exams 2- book 3- running

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- eat 2- sharp 3- wearing 4- helpful

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (d) 2- (f) 3- (a) 4- (e) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:

- 1- windy 2- sunny
3- It's very hot in the summer. 4- Yes, it is.

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- Adel is not a nervous person.
2- Can you help me, please?
3- Where does Peter find the king?

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

Mohamed Salah is a great footballer.

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: mazen@school.net

To: omar@hotmail.com

Subject: Amazing summer adventures in Sharm El-Sheikh!

Dear Omar!

I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you all about my awesome summer holiday in Sharm El-Sheikh. We visited the beautiful Ras Mohammed National Park and saw colorful fish and coral reefs while snorkeling. We also tried delicious local food. My whole family enjoyed the trip with me, but I missed you a lot! I can't wait to catch up and hear about your summer too! Lots of love,
Mazen

Test (3)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1- soft 2- clean 3- claws

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

- 1- cakes 2- candles 3- present

Step Ahead

Choose the correct answer:
1- discovery 2- rarely visit 3- rarely visit 4- playlist

Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (d) 2- (a) 3- (a) 4- (e) 5- (b)

Read the text and answer:
1- vegetables 2- morning
He hopes he will be able to buy a cart and a monkey to ride it to his field and back home.
He grows different kinds of fruit and vegetables.

Reorder the words:
1- How often do you eat cheese?
2- My dad didn't go to his work yesterday.
3- She sometimes goes to the club.

Punctuate the following sentence:
Mr. I don't like these toys.

Write a text of (50) words:
"Having fun at the community garden"
I had so much fun at the community garden! We planted lots of cool stuff, like tomatoes and peppers. It's great to have green spaces in our neighborhood. We learned how to take care of plants and watched them grow. When they were ready, we picked fresh tomatoes and peppers. It was awesome to eat food we grew ourselves. Community gardens are the best!

Test (4)

1 Listen and choose:
1- Italian 2- China 3- century

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- oils 2- dirt 3- shiny

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- balloons 2- Are 3- make 4- a few

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (c) 2- (a) 3- (f) 4- (e) 5- (b)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- smaller 2- cheaper
3- The first plane was made in 1903.
4- Some people think that traveling by plane is not safe.

Answer Key

6 Reorder the words:
1- I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment.
2- English is my favorite school subject.
3- We can climb up this tree.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
Let's watch a movie together.

8 Write an email of (50) words:
From: osama@school.net
To: amr@hotmail.com
Subject: A book I read about Marco Polo
Hi Amr!

I just finished reading this awesome book about Marco Polo, and I couldn't wait to tell you about it! Marco explored so many cool places, like China and India. I liked that he traveled a lot and brought back stories of new cultures and amazing treasures. He had a very exciting adventure! You should definitely read this book too.

Lots of love,
Osama

Test (5)

1 Listen and choose:
1- bodies 2- Nile 3- beans

2 Listen and complete the sentences:
1- countries 2- plants 3- roofs

3 Choose the correct answer:
1- How often 2- climb 3- who 4- Perfume

4 Read and match (A) with (B):
1- (e) 2- (f) 3- (b) 4- (c) 5- (a)

5 Read the text and answer:
1- farm 2- nice
3- The farmers' sons were helping them with their work.
4- They grow vegetables and fruit.

6 Reorder the words:
1- I don't like making candles.
2- My sister always eats a healthy breakfast.
3- There are many cars in New York.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:
Which area of Egypt produces the most wheat?

Answer Key

8 Write a text of (50) words: "A visit to the zoo"

Last week, my family and I went to the zoo! We drove there in our car and packed a yummy lunch. I saw so many cool animals like lions, monkeys, and giraffes. We even got to feed the elephants! It was so much fun watching them play. I learned a lot about different animals and their habitats. I can't wait to go back to the zoo again soon!

Test (6)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1- forests 2- data 3- volunteers

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

- 1- move 2- different 3- friends

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- Are there 2- didn't speak 3- shed
4- soft

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (c) 2- (e) 3- (b) 4- (f) 5- (a)

5 Read the text and answer:

- 1- coffee 2- thousand
3- Coffee grew first in Ethiopia.
4- Arab travelers took the coffee plant to Egypt and other Arab countries.

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- Peter lives in a big palace.
2- Do you like using perfumes?
3- My dad works in a factory.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

My friend Ali and I went on a trip.

8 Write an email of (50) words:

From: nadia@school.net

To: salma@hotmail.com

Subject: Fun weekend adventures!

Hey Salma!

I hope you're doing great! I wanted to tell you all about my exciting weekend. On Saturday, my family and I went to the park. We had a picnic and played games like hide-and-seek and football. It was so much fun! On Sunday, we went to the movie theater and watched a cool superhero movie. We also had ice cream afterward. It

was the best weekend ever! I can't wait to hear about your weekend too.
Take care,
Nadia

Test (7)

1 Listen and choose:

- 1- family 2- rollercoaster 3- eat

2 Listen and complete the sentences:

- 1- playground 2- sit 3- grow

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1- exciting 2- went 3- but 4- blow up

4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- 1- (d) 2- (f) 3- (e) 4- (b) 5- (a)

5 Read the text and answer:

- 1- parks 2- bins
3- Some children pick flowers and walk on grass.
4- So we can enjoy them at any time.

6 Reorder the words:

- 1- How often do you go to the dentist?
2- I'm surprised to see you here!
3- My uncle works in a hospital.

7 Punctuate the following sentence:

He's going to Aswan on Thursday.

8 Write a text of (50) words:

"After-school activities"

After school, I do my homework. It's important to finish it before anything else. Then I watch TV for a little while. Sometimes, my mom takes me to the club, where I play games with my friends. We have dinner together. My favorite part is when we eat dessert! After that, it's time to go to bed and sleep. I love my after-school activities!